

# Forgotten Books

— [www.forgottenbooks.com](http://www.forgottenbooks.com) —

Copyright © 2016 FB &c Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

# HERODOTI

## ORIENTALIA ANTIQUIORA;

COMPRISING MAINLY

SUCH PORTIONS OF HERODOTUS AS GIVE A CONNECTED

HISTORY OF THE EAST,

TO THE

FALL OF BABYLON AND THE DEATH OF CYRUS THE GREAT.

BY

HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D.,

PROFESSOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND ENGLISH LITERATURE IN  
DICKINSON COLLEGE.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON & COMPANY, 346 AND 348 BROADWAY

M DCCC LVII.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1854, by

D. APPLETON & COMPANY,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern  
District of New York.

TO

WILLIAM H. ALLEN, LL. D.,

PRESIDENT OF GIRARD COLLEGE,

EMINENT ALIKE FOR HIS VARIED LEARNING AND HIS  
QUALITIES OF HEART ;

AND SPECIALLY IN REMEMBRANCE OF THE HAPPY INSTRUCTIONS  
WHICH RENDERED PLEASANT THE TOILSOME ASCENT  
TO WHICH HIS EXAMPLE INCITED,

THIS VOLUME

*Is Most Respectfully Inscribed,*

BY HIS FRIEND AND FORMER PUPIL.



# INTRODUCTION.

---

THE middle of the fifth century before the Christian era witnessed a new phenomenon in Greece. It was the opening of a new era in the history of her literature. Already Greece excelled in culture. Gymnastics, poetry, eloquence, painting, sculpture—these had their schools and their rivalries. The public games were the theater for their display. The greatest of these gathered the chosen men of Greece and the colonies, once in four years, on the plains of Olympia; here was the foot race and the chariot race; here were prodigies of leaping, boxing, wrestling; here were the contests of music and of poetry. Some of the finest odes of Pindar—the name yet unrivaled in the loftier style of lyrics—were produced on these occasions. Feats of arms and triumphs of art had held the arena for centuries; but now for the first time a man stands up to read a prose composition, having the length, variety, and completeness of a history; and the delighted audience bestowed by acclamation on the nine books into which the author had divided his work, the names of the nine Muses. Such is the story of the introduction of the history of Herodotus to the world. It has indeed been doubted whether such recital took place, and by some strenuously denied; there is, however, good reason to believe the account correct; and it is conceded that some time subsequently, after revising and perfecting his work, he recited portions of it at Athens, at the festival of the Panathenæa; and so highly pleased was that enlightened people, that they bestowed on the author a present of ten talents from the public treasury;—a sum equal to, if silver talents are meant, about 10,555 dollars; if gold, about 105,555 dollars.

It is said there was a youth, some fifteen years of age, in the audience which was favored with the recital of this first historic production of Greece, who became so intently interested that his

feelings at length overpowered him, and he gave way to a passionate flood of tears. That lad was Thucydides, who, inspired from that moment with the idea of his vocation, produced in his riper years, laboring at it still in the midst of wars and in exile, that masterly work of the internal history of Greece, which he hesitated not, in the simplicity and prophetic instinct of genius, to call—an immortal treasure—*κτῆμα ἐς αἰεί*.

The disciple of Thucydides was Xenophon, who both continued the history of Greece from where his master left it, and also imitated their common great exemplar in treating of Asiatic affairs. He is even more popularly known by the latter works than by the former. His *Life and Institutes of Cyrus the Great*, and his *Expedition of the Younger Cyrus*, containing the celebrated *Retreat of the Ten Thousand*, seem to have inspired him with a livelier enthusiasm than the matter of fact details of his *Hellenica*.

These three are the great historians of Greece. Herodotus opened the historic era, and has been called from the days of antiquity (Cic. de Legg. ii.) the *Father of History*.

Who then, we naturally inquire, was this Herodotus?

### I.—LIFE OF HERODOTUS.

Herodotus Halicarnassenses, so called from his native place, Halicarnassus, a town of Caria in Asia Minor, was born 484 B. C. He had a brother, named Theodorus. The family, originally of the Dorian stock, is said to have been illustrious; and the parents of our historian have given sufficient proof of their goodness and piety towards the gods, both in the naming and the education of their children.

But few particulars of the life of Herodotus are known to us. He was early devoted to the Muses, and was doubtless incited thereto by domestic example. His father was a man eminent in the state; his mother a woman of commanding influence; and an uncle, of the name of Panyasis, was so excellent a poet as to have been ranked by the ancients as second only to Homer. Having acquired such education as these domestic resources or native teachers could afford, he set out in early manhood to improve his learning by foreign travel. He extended his progress eastward as far as Ecbatana and Babylon, embracing, on the one hand, Syria and the Levant, and on the other, Colchis and the coasts of the

Euxine. Southward, he visited Egypt and the northern parts of Africa. Through Greece and her colonies, from Asia Minor to the south of Italy, his personal observation and knowledge was sufficiently complete; and there is good reason to believe that he penetrated even the remote and unfrequented regions of Scythia. He traveled not for amusement nor to gratify curiosity, but as a philosopher he sought out every where the history, the antiquities, the religions, the political institutions, the customs, of the peoples among whom he journeyed. He pursued his inquiries systematically and diligently. He conversed with the priests and the learned; he listened to their traditions; he copied their inscriptions and consulted their records and native writers where such were to be found.

What length of time he passed in foreign parts we cannot tell; but if we allow five years for the composition of his history, it will give him not much short of ten for these preparatory labors; for the time of the recital of portions of it at Athens, as named above, brings us to about the fortieth year of his age. On his return to his native city, he found that his friends who had had influence in the state were dead, and the reigning tyrannies were too distasteful to his liberal sentiments. From this cause, as also perhaps to secure a more quiet retreat for his studies, he retired to the little island of Samos—a spot henceforth sacred in the annals of historic literature. He subsequently took up his residence at Thurium in Magna Græcia, and appears to have devoted his life, by additional researches and revisions, to the perfection of his great work; for there are passages which a comparison of dates shows to have received the finishing touch in his extreme old age. The time and circumstances of his death are not known. The Athenians honored him with a monument, whether tomb or cenotaph, beside that of Thucydides.

## II.—THE CHARACTER OF THE HISTORY.

On this subject I shall not enlarge, but simply remark:—

1. *On the Reliability of the History.*—Herodotus is not, as some have imagined, a wholesale retailer of fables and nursery tales. He was a most diligent and careful inquirer after facts. But the range of his inquiry led him back into the most remote antiquity, and out into the most distant regions of which he had any know-



ledge. That the facts were sometimes obscure, doubtful, or contradictory; that they were sometimes exaggerated or disguised by superadded fictions, is what he felt as painfully as the most critical reader can; but out of the mass of material around him, he aimed to educe a consistent and truthful story. That he was honest and faithful in this endeavor, no one can doubt who reads him attentively. Few authors indeed, of any age, have so entirely secured the confidence of the reader in their integrity and love of truth. How far he has succeeded in giving a history in all points authentic and free from error, is another question. He puts down some things which to us are incredible; some which he intimates are so to himself. But these we are in no danger of being misled by, as they are subjected to every man's judgment. The age in which he wrote gave large credence to the marvelous; we have gone to the opposite extreme. Herodotus is not to be charged with a too easy credulity. In mere human affairs he was cautious, and for his age may be reckoned as inclined rather to the skeptical. In matters of superstitions he was less so. In his whole character he was a man profoundly religious. He had a deep faith in a god; in his providence and justice; in a religion; in the divine character of some of the oracles. But here, again, we are in no danger of being misled; from our different stand-point, the fact or the supposed fact stands in a different light.

Another observation which should be made, is, that some of these marvelous tales which seem most incredible, belong not to the current of the history, but are introduced in digressions, not so much for any importance of the facts themselves, as for the illustration of a principle; and as such, if we reject them as facts, they may stand as a supposable case, and will then be reckoned as other illustrations and digressions are, either ornaments or blemishes according to the judgment of the critic.

In matters of proper historic fact and in geographical knowledge, the extent and accuracy of his learning have challenged the admiration of the world. Modern researches have tended to confirm his correctness both in the general, and to a surprising extent in the detail. The vituperations of Plutarch have had little weight, either in his own or in subsequent times; and the work of Herodotus, as the storehouse of ancient history, has been held in highest esteem by the best scholars of every age.

2. *Plan of the History.*—The objective idea of the great work of Herodotus is that of an Universal History. And it is worthy of remark, that the earliest attempt at such a grand design should appear, not in the form of simple annals, but constructed according to the most perfect rules of art. Embracing the greatest variety of detail, it happily preserves the law of unity; reduces the multifarious and complex materials to an admirable simplicity, and maintains an easy and natural progression, with a growing interest from the beginning to the close. The prominent object on the canvas is the contest of Europe and Asia. The shifting scene exhibits the progress of hostilities from the simple provocation of the rape of Io, embracing as it advances wider and deeper interests and awakening more determined energies, till it brings in, by a natural development, the grand and decisive conflict in which the millions of Persia, led by the generals of Darius and Xerxes successively, met with those prodigies of valor at Marathon and Thermopylæ and Plataea, as well as in the sea-fight off Salamis, and in which Grecian bravery triumphed at length over Persian numbers, and Grecian independence trampled on the haughty pretensions of the East. In the foreground of this scene stand Hellas and Persia as the principal figures, or rather, on the side of Hellas, Athens and Sparta as her representatives. The minor states of Greece and the colonies on the one hand, and on the other, the states of Asia subjected to Persia or conterminous to the empire, fill up in their proper relations the central group. Besides this, we have, on the true principles of art, Egypt and Scythia on either side, as centres of the two lateral groups, brought into such prominence as to give to every part its proper relief. Such is the idea of the form of the history as it pictures itself on the mind of the reader. Through all these nations, therefore, the story runs on in an easy meandering course, diverging freely to the right hand or to the left, but always in a way that seems natural, because always led by some law of association. The digressions, which thus become more frequent and longer than comports with the ordinary standard of historic composition, are not only harmonious to his design but necessary to its accomplishment. It is the only way in which he could give proper completeness to the history of the various nations on which he touched. Besides, so happily for the most part are these digressions interwoven, that the combination constitutes a perfect mosaic; and such, with few exceptions, is their intrinsic in-

terest, that the most captious critic would be at a loss to say what part he would willingly dispense with.

But history was not to Herodotus a concatenation of dead facts, nor yet the mere product of human acts or human passions, but rather a succession of phenomena expressing a living principle. He believed in a Ruler of the world who held the scales of justice, and who would sooner or later mete to every man and every people the proper reward of their deeds. The idea of the Nemesis, or Divine Providence, is the animating idea of his work, and it is that which gave him a consciousness of his dignity and responsibility. In his conception, the office of historian embraces that of philosopher and religious teacher.

3. *Political Sentiments.*—Herodotus was a staunch republican. In a rising of the people in Halicarnassus he hastened from the quiet of his literary labors in Samos to assist in a revolution which aimed, as he thought, to put down the tyranny; but when success showed that the object was only to put down the tyrant to make room for another, he quitted his native city in disgust; and it was this perhaps which determined him to seek a retreat in the south of Italy, with a band of adventurers, where he might share in laying the foundations of a new state in the juster principles of equity. But though decided in his convictions, he writes with great liberality and treats all political institutions with respect. He not only concedes to every people the right to maintain such form of government as they may choose, but that different forms of government may be adapted to the ideas and culture of different people.

4. *Style.*—Herodotus had the advantage of the softest of the Grecian dialects, and he wrote in a style which for unaffected simplicity and ease has few parallels in any language. We have equaled it in our Robinson Crusoe, and scarcely in any other work of standard merit. He seldom attains to the studied elegance of Livy or Hume, and he is the farthest remove possible both from the jerking brevity of Tacitus and the labored pomp of Gibbon and Cicero.

### III.—PLAN OF THE PRESENT WORK.

The plan of this work originated several years ago, when the editor occupied the chair of Ancient Languages in the Ohio Wesleyan University, and a considerable portion of the Notes was

written at that time, but circumstances then prevented him from completing it. In his present position, his duties requiring a course of lectures on history, his attention was called anew to the great importance of Herodotus to general historical studies, and to the want of an American edition suitable for students; for, an available school edition can comprise only select portions of the whole.

The plan of the present selection has been, to take such parts as would give a connected history of the Asiatic countries and of Egypt. To this I was determined mainly by two considerations; first, the growing interest in the history and antiquities of those regions at the present time; and secondly, that the other Greek and the Roman authors commonly put into the hands of students do not cover this ground at all. This portion of Herodotus therefore opens to the learner a new world, from which he is otherwise excluded.

The present volume brings down the history of the East to the death of Cyrus the Great. The *ÆGYPTIACA* and the subsequent portions of the *ORIENTALIA* will be completed at as early a day as practicable.

THE TEXT of Herodotus is pretty well settled, and there is very general agreement on most points of importance, in the best standard editions. But where these differ, instead of following any one implicitly, I have used my own judgment, and in any instance that affects the sense, have given the various readings in the Notes, that the reader also may judge. It will be interesting to the learner to know that most of the various readings found in the manuscripts are merely orthographical; and probably the orthography of the dialect was not so well established in the time of Herodotus but that he may have varied occasionally from his own standard.

In preparing the Notes, I have endeavored to keep in mind that they are intended for learners in the earlier part of their classical course. Herodotus is particularly adapted to academical reading and to the lower collegiate classes. I have therefore made the explanations in the former part of the work quite full, with frequent references to such grammars as are most commonly found in the hands of the student. To the larger grammars I have referred less frequently, and to the elementary works, not at all; assuming that these are sufficiently familiar to render it unnecessary.

The Notes proper are intended to be purely explanatory and grammatical. Other remarks, of the nature of historical criticism

or investigation, are for the most part reserved to the end of the chapter, where, as occasion demanded, they are placed in a separate paragraph, generally brief and calculated to awaken reflection and incite to further inquiry. This feature of the work is somewhat novel, and it is hoped will commend itself to the approbation of teachers. The substance of these REMARKS might have been gathered into one or more extended essays, and might thus have appeared in a character of greater dignity; but I have chosen to intersperse them in this way with the hope of securing for them a more general perusal.

---

### ABBREVIATIONS.

The following are such abbreviations used in the notes as need explanation. Others are sufficiently obvious, or the references are written out in full.

A.,	Anthon's Greek Grammar.
Bul.,	Bullions' " "
B. or Butt.,	Buttman's " " (Robinson's Translation.)
C.,	Crosby's " "
K.,	Kühner's " " (School Ed. when Jelf's is not specified.)
M.,	Matthiæ's " " (Leipzig Ed.)
S.,	Sophocles' " "
Borh.,	. . Borheck's Apparatus ad Herod.
Gron.,	. . Gronovius (in Ed. Herod.).
Hoog.,	. . Hoogoveen's Greek Particles.
L. or Larch.,	Larcher's Notes (Cooley's Ed.).
Lau.,	. , Laurent's Translation with Notes.
Schw.,	. . Schweighæuser (in Ed. Herod.).
T.,	. . . Turner, Notes on Herod.
Tab.,	. . Table, in remarks prefixed to the Notes.
Vig. Idd.,	. Viger's Greek Idioms.
Wess.,	. . Wesseling.
Wytt.,	. . Wyttenbach.

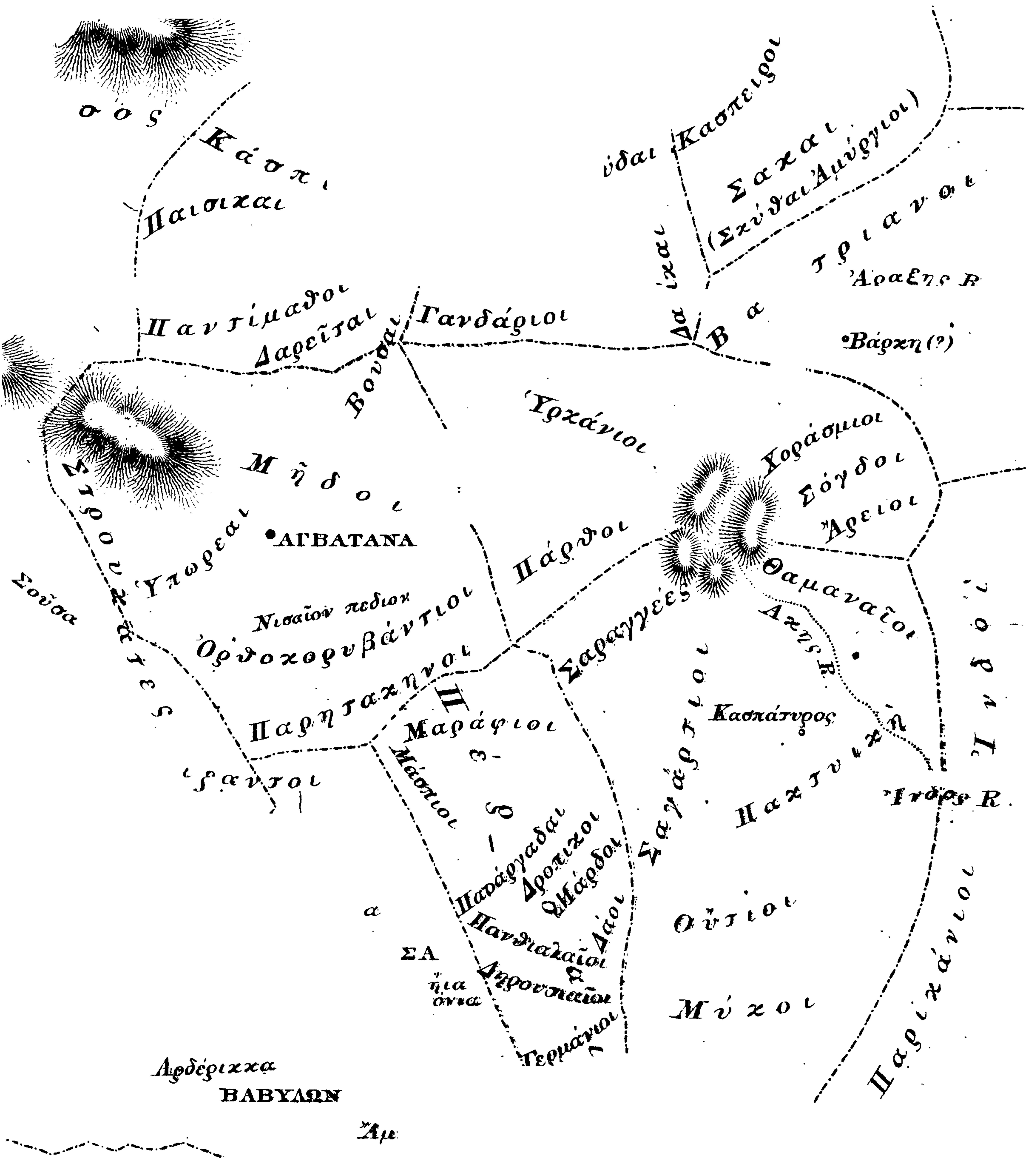
# S U M M A R Y .

---

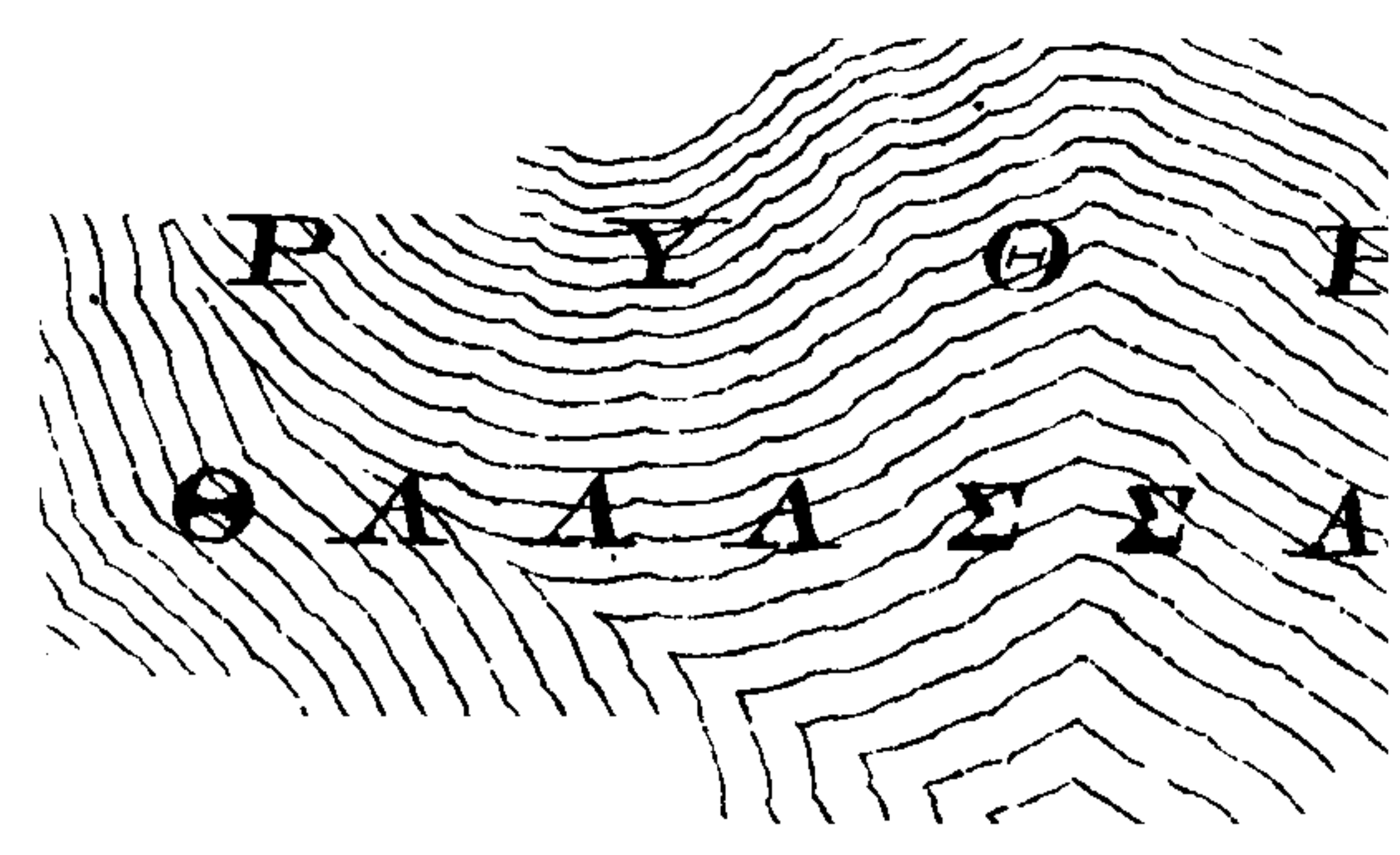
## BOOK I. CLIO.

HERODOTUS, intending to develop the causes of the hostility between the Greeks and the Barbarians, in the first place records the mutual rapes of women committed by the two parties; that of Io, 1; that of Europa and Medea, 2; that of Helen, 3: in doing which, he states the accounts given both by the Persians and the Phœnicians. Then, as Crœsus, king of the Lydians, was the first to attack the Greeks with arms, 5, he enters on the Lydian history, 6. The first kings of the Lydians, then, sprang from Atys; the second dynasty from Hercules 7; the last of whom, Candaules, having been killed by Gyges, 8-12, the kingdom is transferred to the Mermnadæ. Then follows the history of Gyges, 13, 14; that of Ardys, 15, under whose reign the Cimmerians made an irruption into Asia, and took Sardis, 15; that of Sadyattes, 16; that of Alyattes, 18, 25, who expelled the Cimmerians from Asia. Digressions are interposed, relating to Thrasybulus, the tyrant of Miletus; and Periander, the tyrant of Corinth; contemporary with whom was Arion, saved by a dolphin, 20-24. Alyattes is succeeded by his son Crœsus, 26, who subjugates the Asiatic Greeks, and extends his power over the whole of Asia, as far as the Halys, 26-28. Crœsus is admonished unsuccessfully, by Solon of Athens, to hold no one happy, until he have ended life in happiness, 29-33. Crœsus is visited with great calamity; his son Atys is killed, unwittingly, in the chase, by Adrastus, a Phrygian refugee, 34-45. The Medes having been conquered by Cyrus, Crœsus, alarmed at the growing power of the Persians, first sends round to make trial of the oracles of the Greeks, 46-52; and then consults about levying war against Cyrus: an ambiguous answer is returned, which Crœsus interprets as favorable to himself; and therefore undertakes the expedition, first sending to court the alliance of the Greeks, the chief nations of whom, at that time, were the Athenians and Lacedæmonians: the former sprung from the Pelasgi, the latter from the Hellenes, 56 seq. The empire of the Athenians was then held by Pisistratus, 59-64: the Lacedæmonians had received excellent laws from Lycurgus, 65, and conquered the Tegeans, 66 seq. The Lacedæmonians frame an alliance with Crœsus, 69. Crœsus crosses the Halys, and engages Cyrus with dubious success in the Pterian plain, 75 seq. Returning from Sardis, he sends for assistance from the Egyptians, Babylonians, and Lacedæmonians, 77. Cyrus meanwhile follows rapidly on the heels of Crœsus; conquers the

Lydian army before the town; besieges Sardis, which he takes, together with Crœsus himself, 79–85. The country and manners of the Lydians are briefly described, 93 seq. The history then passes to Cyrus, 95. The empire of Asia had been five hundred and twenty years in the hands of the Assyrians: the Medes were the first to assert their freedom: their example was followed by other nations. The Medes, after some years of anarchy, choose Deïoces for their king, 95–101. He is succeeded by Phraortes, 102. Phraortes is succeeded by Cyaxares, who expels the Scythians, who had taken possession of Asia; and subjects the Assyrians, 103–106. Astyages the son of Cyaxares, admonished by a dream, gives his daughter Mandane in marriage to a Persian, Cambyses: he delivers the child born of that marriage to Harpagus, with orders to put it to death: Harpagus gives the child to a herdsman, with orders to expose it; but the herdsman, prevailed upon by his own wife, educates the child as his own. Cyrus, thus preserved, having reached his tenth year, is recognized by his grandfather, Astyages, and sent safe into Persia: Harpagus, however, is punished in a most cruel manner, 107–121. Harpagus, desirous of being avenged of the injury he had received at the hands of Astyages, prompts Cyrus to rise up against his grandfather: Cyrus excites the Persians to rebellion, 122–126. The Medes are routed in two battles, and Astyages himself is taken prisoner, 127–130. The manners of the Persians are described, 131–140. After conquering Crœsus, Cyrus directs his arms against the Asiatic Greeks: but before the Historian describes the war, he gives an account of the situation of Ionia, the origin, institutions, and manners of its inhabitants, 142–148; the same with respect to Æolis, 149. Cyrus having once more subdued the Lydians, who had rebelled, 154–160, sends Harpagus against the Ionians; among whom, the Phocæans and Teians forsake their towns, and establish themselves elsewhere: the rest submit: 162–170. Caria and Lycia are next subdued, 171–176. In the mean time, Cyrus in person subdues Upper Asia: description of Babylon, and history of Semiramis and Nitocris, 177–187. Cyrus conquers the Babylonians in battle; drives them within the city, which he besieges, and captures by stratagem, 188–191. The territory of the Babylonians, their institutions, laws, manners, diet, etc. described, 192–200. At last, Cyrus, carrying war against the Massagetæ, crosses the Araxes, and is slain by Queen Tomyris, 201–214. Arts and customs of the Massagetæ, 215, 216.



Β Ι Η







THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

[Continue](#)

\*Fair usage policy applies

15 κατὰ τωὐτὸ τὸ καὶ Ἕλληνες λέγουσιν, Ἴοῦν τὴν Ἰνάχου, ταύτας στάσας κατὰ πρύμνην τῆς νηὸς ὠνέεσθαι τῶν φορτίων, τῶν σφι ἦν θυμὸς μάλιστα· καὶ τοὺς Φοίνικας διακελευσαμένους ὀρμῆσαι ἐπ' αὐτάς. τὰς μὲν δὴ πλεῦνας τῶν γυναικῶν ἀποφυγέειν, τὴν δὲ Ἴοῦν σὺν  
20 ἄλλησι ἀρπασθῆναι· ἐσβαλομένους δὲ ἐς τὴν νέα, οἴχεσθαι ἀποπλέοντας ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον.

2. Οὕτω μὲν Ἴοῦν ἐς Αἴγυπτον ἀπικέσθαι λέγουσι Πέρσαι, οὐκ ὡς Φοίνικες, καὶ τῶν ἀδικημάτων τοῦτο ἄρξαι πρῶτον· μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Ἑλλήνων τινὰς (οὐ γὰρ ἔχουσι τοῦνομα ἀπηγήσασθαι) φασὶ τῆς  
5 Φοινίκης ἐς Τύρον προσσχόντας, ἀρπάσαι τοῦ βασιλέος τὴν θυγατέρα Εὐρώπην. — εἶησαν δ' ἂν οὗτοι Κρήτες. — ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἴσα σφι πρὸς ἴσα γενέσθαι· μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Ἕλληνας αἰτίους τῆς δευτέρης ἀδικίης γενέσθαι. καταπλώσαντας γὰρ μακρῇ νηὶ ἐς Αἴαν τε  
10 τὴν Κολχίδα καὶ ἐπὶ Φᾶσιν ποταμόν, ἐνθεῦτεν, διαπρηξαμένους καὶ τᾶλλα τῶν εἵνεκεν ἀπίκατο, ἀρπάσαι τοῦ βασιλέος τὴν θυγατέρα Μηδείην. πέμψαντα δὲ τὸν Κόλχων βασιλέα ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα κήρυκα αἰτέειν τε δίκας τῆς ἀρπαγῆς καὶ ἀπαιτέειν τὴν θυγατέρα· τοὺς  
15 δὲ ὑποκρίνασθαι, ὡς οὐδὲ ἐκεῖνοι Ἴοῦς τῆς Ἀργείης ἔδοσαν σφι δίκας τῆς ἀρπαγῆς, οὐδὲ ὦν αὐτοὶ δώσειν ἐκεῖνοισι.

3. Δευτέρῃ δὲ λέγουσι γενεῇ μετὰ ταῦτα Ἀλέξανδρον τὸν Πριάμου, ἀκηκοότα ταῦτα, ἐθελῆσαί οἱ ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος δι' ἀρπαγῆς γενέσθαι γυναῖκα, ἐπιστάμενον πάντως ὅτι οὐ δώσει δίκας· οὔτε γὰρ ἐκεῖνους διδόναι.  
5 οὕτω δὲ ἀρπάσαντος αὐτοῦ Ἑλένην, τοῖσι Ἕλλησι δόξαι πρῶτον πέμψαντας ἀγγέλους ἀπαιτέειν τε Ἑλένην καὶ δίκας τῆς ἀρπαγῆς αἰτέειν. τοὺς δέ, προῖσχομένων ταῦτα, προφέρειν σφι Μηδείης τὴν ἀρπαγὴν, ὡς οὐ δόντες αὐτοὶ δίκας οὐδὲ ἐκδόντες ἐπαιτέοντων βου-  
10 λοίατό σφι παρ' ἄλλων δίκας γίνεσθαι.

4. Μέχρι μὲν ὧν τούτου ἄρπαγὰς μούνας εἶναι παρ' ἀλλήλων· τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου Ἕλληνας δὴ μεγάλως αἰτίους γενέσθαι· προτέρους γὰρ ἄρξαι στρατεύεσθαι ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην ἢ σφέας ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην. τὸ μὲν νυν ἄρπάζειν γυναῖκας ἀνδρῶν ἀδίκων νομίζειν ἔργον εἶναι, τὸ δὲ ἄρ- 5  
 πασθεισέων σπουδὴν ποιήσασθαι τιμωρέειν ἀνοήτων, τὸ δὲ μηδεμίην ὄρην ἔχειν ἄρπασθεισέων σωφρόνων· δῆλα γὰρ δὴ ὅτι, εἰ μὴ αὐταὶ ἐβουλέατο, οὐκ ἂν ἤρπάζοντο. σφέας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας λέγουσι Πέρσαι ἄρπαζομενέων τῶν γυναικῶν λόγον οὐδένα ποιήσασθαι, 10  
 Ἕλληνας δὲ Λακεδαιμονίης εἵνεκεν γυναικὸς στόλον μέγαν συναγεῖραι, καὶ ἔπειτα ἐλθόντας ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην τὴν Πριάμου δύναμιν κατελεῖν. ἀπὸ τούτου αἰεὶ ἠγήσασθαι τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν σφίσι εἶναι πολέμιον. τὴν γὰρ Ἀσίην καὶ τὰ ἐνοικέοντα ἔθνη βάρβαρα οἰκειεῦνται οἱ Πέρ- 15  
 σαι, τὴν δὲ Εὐρώπην καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἠγηνται κεχωρίσθαι.

5. Οὕτω μὲν Πέρσαι λέγουσι γενέσθαι, καὶ διὰ τὴν Ἰλίου ἄλωσιν εὐρίσκουσι σφίσι εἶναι τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς ἐχθρῆς τῆς ἐς τοὺς Ἕλληνας. περὶ δὲ τῆς Ἰοῦς οὐκ ὁμολογέουσι Πέρσησι οὕτω Φοίνικες· οὐ γὰρ ἄρπαγῇ σφέας χρησαμένους λέγουσι ἀγαγεῖν αὐτὴν ἐς Αἴγυπτον, 5  
 ἀλλ' ὡς ἐν τῷ Ἀργεῖ ἐμίσητο τῷ ναυκλήρῳ τῆς νηός· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔμαθεν ἔγκυος εἶναι, αἰδεομένη τοὺς τοκέας, οὕτω δὲ ἐθελουτὴν αὐτὴν τοῖσι Φοίνιξι συνεκπλῶσαι, ὡς ἂν μὴ κατάδηλος γένηται. ταῦτα μὲν νυν Πέρσαι τε καὶ Φοίνικες λέγουσι. ἐγὼ δὲ περὶ μὲν τούτων οὐκ ἔρ- 10  
 χομαι ἐρέων ὡς οὕτω ἢ ἄλλως κως ταῦτα ἐγένετο· τὸν δὲ οἶδα αὐτὸς πρῶτον ὑπάρξαντα ἀδίκων ἔργων ἐς τοὺς Ἕλληνας, τοῦτον σημήνας προβήσομαι ἐς τὸ πρόσω τοῦ λόγου, ὁμοίως σμικρὰ καὶ μεγάλα ἄστυ ἀνθρώπων ἐπεξιῶν. τὰ γὰρ τὸ πάλαι μεγάλα ἦν, τὰ πολλὰ αὐτῶν 15  
 σμικρὰ γέγονε, τὰ δὲ ἐπ' ἐμεῦ ἦν μεγάλα, πρότερον ἦν σμικρά. τὴν ἀνθρωπητὴν ὧν ἐπιστάμενος εὐδαιμονίην

οὐδαμὰ ἐν τούτῳ μένουσαν ἐπιμνήσομαι ἀμφοτέρων ομοίως.

6. ΚΡΟΙΣΟΣ ἦν Λυδὸς μὲν γένος, παῖς δὲ Ἄλυ-  
 άττεω, τύραννος δὲ ἐθνέων τῶν ἐντὸς Ἄλυος ποταμοῦ.  
 ὃς ῥέων ἀπὸ μεσαμβρίας μεταξὺ Σύρων καὶ Παφλαγόν-  
 ων ἐξίει πρὸς βορῆν ἄνεμον ἐς τὸν Εὐξεινον καλεόμενον  
 5 πόντον. οὗτος ὁ Κροῖσος βαρβάρων πρῶτος τῶν ἡμεῖς  
 ἴδμεν τοὺς μὲν κατεστρέψατο Ἑλλήνων ἐς φόρου ἀπα-  
 γωγὴν, τοὺς δὲ φίλους προσεποιήσατο. κατεστρέψατο  
 μὲν Ἰωνάς τε καὶ Αἰολέας καὶ Δωριέας τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ,  
 φίλους δὲ προσεποιήσατο Λακεδαιμονίους. πρὸ δὲ τῆς  
 10 Κροῖσου ἀρχῆς πάντες Ἕλληνες ἦσαν ἐλεύθεροι· τὸ  
 γὰρ Κιμμερίων στράτευμα τὸ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἰωνίην ἀπικόμε-  
 νον, Κροῖσου ἐὼν πρεσβύτερον, οὐ καταστροφή ἐγένετο  
 τῶν πολίων, ἀλλ' ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς ἀρπαγῆ.

7. Ἡ δὲ ἡγεμονία οὕτω περιῆλθε, εὐῶσα Ἡρακλει-  
 δέων, ἐς τὸ γένος τὸ Κροῖσου, καλεομένους δὲ Μερμνά-  
 δας. ἦν Κανδαύλης, τὸν οἱ Ἕλληνες Μυρσίλον ὀνομά-  
 ζουσι, τύραννος Σαρδίων, ἀπόγονος δὲ Ἀλκαίου τοῦ  
 5 Ἡρακλέος. Ἄγρων μὲν γὰρ ὁ Νίνου τοῦ Βήλου τοῦ  
 Ἀλκαίου πρῶτος Ἡρακλειδέων βασιλεὺς ἐγένετο Σαρ-  
 δίων, Κανδαύλης δὲ ὁ Μύρσου ὕστατος. οἱ δὲ πρότε-  
 ρον Ἄγρωνος βασιλεύσαντες ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἦσαν  
 ἀπόγονοι Λυδοῦ τοῦ Ἄτυος, ἀπ' ὅτε οὗ δῆμος Λύδιος  
 10 ἐκλήθη ὁ πᾶς οὗτος, πρότερον Μήων καλεόμενος. πα-  
 ρὰ τούτων δὲ Ἡρακλεῖδαι ἐπιτραφθέντες ἔσχον τὴν ἀρ-  
 χὴν ἐκ θεοπροπίου, ἐκ δούλης τε τῆς Ἰαρδάνου γεγυνο-  
 τες καὶ Ἡρακλέος, ἄρξαντες μὲν ἐπὶ δύο τε καὶ εἴκοσι  
 γενεὰς ἀνδρῶν ἕτεα πέντε τε καὶ πεντακόσια, παῖς παρὰ  
 15 πατρὸς ἐκδεκόμενος τὴν ἀρχὴν μέχρι Κανδαύλεω τοῦ  
 Μύρσου.

13. Ἐσχε δὲ τὴν βασιληίην καὶ ἐκρατύνθη ἐκ τοῦ  
 ἐν Δελφοῖσι χρηστηρίου. ὡς γὰρ δὴ οἱ Λυδοὶ δεινὸν  
 ἐποιεῦντο τὸ Κανδαύλεω πάθος καὶ ἐν ὅπλοισι ἦσαν,

συνέβησαν ἐς τὸ αὐτὸ οἷ τε τοῦ Γύγεω στασιῶται καὶ οἱ  
λοιποὶ Λυδοί, ἣν μὲν δὴ τὸ χρηστήριον ἀνέλη μιν βασι- 5  
λέα εἶναι Λυδῶν, τόνδε βασιλεύειν, ἣν δὲ μή, ἀποδοῦναι  
ὀπίσω ἐς Ἡρακλείδας τὴν ἀρχήν. ἀνεῖλέ τε δὴ τὸ χρη-  
στήριον καὶ ἐβασίλευσεν οὕτω Γύγης. τοσόνδε μέντοι  
εἶπε ἡ Πυθίη, ὡς Ἡρακλείδησι τίσις ἦξει ἐς τὸν πέμ-  
πτον ἀπόγονον Γύγεω. τούτου τοῦ ἔπεος Λυδοί τε καὶ 10  
οἱ βασιλέες αὐτῶν λόγον οὐδένα ἐποιεῦντο, πρὶν δὴ ἐπε-  
τελέσθη.

14. Τὴν μὲν δὴ τυραννίδα οὕτω ἔσχον οἱ Μερμνά-  
δαι, τοὺς Ἡρακλείδας ἀπελόμενοι. Γύγης δὲ τυρανεύ-  
σας ἀπέπεμψε ἀναθήματα ἐς Δελφοὺς οὐκ ὀλίγα, ἀλλ'  
ὅσα μὲν ἀργύρου ἀναθήματά ἐστί οἱ πλεῖστα ἐν Δελ-  
φοῖσι· πάρεξ δὲ τοῦ ἀργύρου χρυσὸν ἄπλετον ἀνέθηκεν 5  
ἄλλον τε καὶ τοῦ μάλιστα μνήμην ἄξιον ἔχειν ἐστί, κρη-  
τῆρές οἱ ἀριθμὸν ἐξ χρύσειοι ἀνακέαται. ἐστᾶσι δὲ οὗ-  
τοι ἐν τῷ Κορινθίων θησαυρῷ σταθμὸν ἔχοντες τριή-  
κοντα τάλαντα· ἀληθείϊ δὲ λόγῳ χρεωμένῳ οὐ Κοριν-  
θίων τοῦ δημοσίου ἐστὶν ὁ θησαυρός, ἀλλὰ Κυψέλου 10  
τοῦ Ἡετίωνος. οὗτος δὲ ὁ Γύγης πρῶτος βαρβάρων  
τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν ἐς Δελφοὺς ἀνέθηκε ἀναθήματα μετὰ  
Μίδην τὸν Γορδῖεω, Φρυγίης βασιλέα. ἀνέθηκε γὰρ δὴ  
καὶ Μίδης τὸν βασιλήϊον θρόνον, ἐς τὸν προκατίζων  
ἐδίκαζε, εὐντα ἀξιοθέητον· κεῖται δὲ ὁ θρόνος οὗτος 15  
ἐνθαπερ οἱ τοῦ Γύγεω κρητῆρες. ὁ δὲ χρυσὸς οὗτος  
καὶ ὁ ἄργυρος, τὸν ὁ Γύγης ἀνέθηκε, ὑπὸ Δελφῶν κα-  
λέεται Γυγάδας ἐπὶ τοῦ ἀναθέντος ἐπωνυμίην. ἐσέ-  
βαλε μὲν νυν στρατιήν καὶ οὗτος, ἐπεὶ τε ἠρξε, ἐς τε  
Μίλητον καὶ ἐς Σμύρνην, καὶ Κολοφῶνος τὸ ἄστυ εἶλε. 20  
ἀλλ' οὐδὲν γὰρ μέγα ἔργον ἀπ' αὐτοῦ ἄλλο ἐγένετο βα-  
σιλεύσαντος δυῶν δέοντα τεσσεράκοντα ἔτεα, τοῦτον  
μὲν παρήσομεν, τοσαῦτα ἐπιμνησθέντες·

15. Ἄρδυος δὲ τοῦ Γύγεω μετὰ Γύγην βασιλεύσαν-  
τος μνήμην ποιήσομαι. οὗτος δὲ Πριηνέας τε εἶλε ἐς

Μίλητόν τε ἐσέβαλε, ἐπὶ τούτου τε τυραννεύοντος Σαρ-  
 δίων Κιμμέριοι ἐξ ἠθέων ὑπὸ Σκυθέων τῶν Νομάδων  
 5 ἐξαναστάντες ἀπικέατο ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην, καὶ Σάρδεις πλὴν  
 τῆς ἀκροπόλιος εἶλον.

16. Ἄρδυος δὲ βασιλεύσαντος ἐνὸς δέοντα πεντή-  
 κοντα ἔτεα ἐξεδέξατο Σαδυάπτης ὁ Ἄρδυος, καὶ ἐβασί-  
 λευσε ἔτεα δώδεκα, Σαδυάπτεω δὲ Ἀλυάπτης. οὗτος δὲ  
 Κυαξάρη τε τῷ Δηϊόκεω ἀπογόνῳ ἐπολέμησε καὶ Μή-  
 5 δοισι, Κιμμερίους τε ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ἐξήλασε, Σμύρνην τε  
 τὴν ἀπὸ Κολοφῶνος κτισθεῖσαν εἶλε, ἐς Κλαζομενάς τε  
 ἐσέβαλε. ἀπὸ μὲν νυν τούτων οὐκ ὡς ἠέλε ἀπήλλαξε,  
 ἀλλὰ προσπταίσας μεγάλως· ἄλλα δὲ ἔργα ἀπεδέξατο  
 ἐὼν ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ ἀξιαπηγητότατα τάδε.

23. Περίανδρος δὲ ἦν Κυψέλου παῖς, οὗτος ὁ τῷ  
 Θρασυβούλῳ τὸ χρηστήριον μηνύσας. ἐτυράννευε δὲ ὁ  
 Περίανδρος Κορινθίου· τῷ δὴ λέγουσι Κορίνθιοι (ὁμο-  
 λογέουσι δὲ σφί Λέσβιοι) ἐν τῷ βίῳ θῶμα μέγιστον  
 5 παραστήναι· Ἄριονα τὸν Μηθυμναῖον ἐπὶ δελφῖνος  
 ἐξενειχθέντα ἐπὶ Ταίναρον, ἐόντα κιθαρωδὸν τῶν τότε  
 ἐόντων οὐδενὸς δεύτερον, καὶ διθύραμβον πρῶτον ἀνθρώ-  
 πων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν ποιήσαντά τε καὶ ὀνομάσαντα καὶ  
 διδάξαντα ἐν Κορίνθῳ.

24. Τοῦτον τὸν Ἄριονα λέγουσι τὸν πολλὸν τοῦ  
 χρόνου διατρίβοντα παρὰ Περιάνδρῳ ἐπιθυμῆσαι πλω-  
 σαι ἐς Ἰταλίην τε καὶ Σικελίην· ἐργασάμενον δὲ χρή-  
 ματα μεγάλα θελήσαι ὀπίσω ἐς Κόρινθον ἀπικέσθαι.  
 5 ὀρμᾶσθαι μὲν νυν ἐκ Τάραντος, πιστεύοντα δὲ οὐδα-  
 μοῖσι μᾶλλον ἢ Κορινθίοισι μισθώσασθαι πλοῖον ἀν-  
 δρῶν Κορινθίων· τοὺς δὲ ἐν τῷ πελάγει ἐπιβουλεύειν  
 τὸν Ἄριονα ἐκβαλόντας ἔχειν τὰ χρήματα· τὸν δὲ  
 συνέντα τοῦτο λίσσεσθαι, χρήματα μὲν σφί προίέντα  
 10 ψυχὴν δὲ παραιτεόμενον. οὐκὼν δὴ πείθειν αὐτὸν τού-  
 τοισι, ἀλλὰ κελεύειν τοὺς πορθμέας ἢ αὐτὸν διαχρᾶ-  
 σθαί μιν, ὡς ἂν ταφῆς ἐν γῇ τυχῆ, ἢ ἐκπηδᾶν ἐς τὴν

θάλασσαν τὴν ταχίστην. ἀπειληθέντα δὲ τὸν Ἀρίονα ἐς ἀπορίην παραιτήσασθαι, ἐπειδὴ σφί οὕτω δοκέοι, περιδέειν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ σκευῇ πάσῃ στάντα ἐν τοῖσι 15 ἔδωλίοισι αἰεῖσαι· αἰεῖσας δὲ ὑπεδέκετο ἑωυτὸν κατεργάσασθαι. καὶ — τοῖσι ἐσελθεῖν γὰρ ἠδονήν, εἰ μέλλοιεν ἀκούσεσθαι τοῦ ἀρίστου ἀνθρώπων ἀοιδοῦ, — ἀναχωρήσαι ἐκ τῆς πρύμνης ἐς μέσην νέα. τὸν δὲ ἐνδύντα τε πᾶσαν τὴν σκευὴν καὶ λαβόντα τὴν κιθάρην, στάντα 20 ἐν τοῖσι ἔδωλίοισι διεξελθεῖν νόμον τὸν ὄρθιον· τελευτῶντος δὲ τοῦ νόμου, ῥίψαί μιν ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν ἑωυτόν, ὡς εἶχε, σὺν τῇ σκευῇ πάσῃ. καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἀποπλέειν ἐς Κόρινθον· τὸν δὲ δελφίνα λέγουσι ὑπολαβόντα ἐξενεῖκαι ἐπὶ Ταίναρον. ἀποβάντα δὲ αὐτὸν χωρέειν 25 ἐς Κόρινθον σὺν τῇ σκευῇ καὶ ἀπικόμενον ἀπηγέεσθαι πᾶν τὸ γεγονός. Περίανδρον δὲ ὑπὸ ἀπιστίας Ἀρίονα μὲν ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχειν οὐδαμῇ μετιέντα, ἀνακῶς δὲ ἔχειν τῶν πορθμέων· ὡς δὲ ἄρα παρῆναι αὐτούς, κληθέντας ἱστορέεσθαι εἴ τι λέγοιεν περὶ Ἀρίονος. φαμένων δὲ 30 ἐκείνων ὡς εἶη τε σῶς περὶ Ἰταλίην καὶ μιν εὖ πρήσσοντα λίποιν ἐν Τάραντι, ἐπιφανῆναί σφί τὸν Ἀρίονα, ὥσπερ ἔχων ἐξεπήδησε· καὶ τοὺς ἐκπλαγέντας οὐκ ἔχειν ἔτι ἐλεγχομένους ἀρνέεσθαι. Ταῦτα μὲν νυν Κορίνθιοί τε καὶ Λέσβιοι λέγουσι, καὶ Ἀρίονός ἐστι ἀνάθημα 35 χάλκεον οὐ μέγα ἐπὶ Ταινάρῳ, ἐπὶ δελφῖνος ἐπεὼν ἀνθρώπος.

28. Χρόνου δὲ ἐπιγυνομένου καὶ κατεστραμμένων σχεδὸν πάντων τῶν ἐντὸς Ἄλυος ποταμοῦ οἰκημένων· — πλὴν γὰρ Κιλικῶν καὶ Λυκίων τοὺς ἄλλους πάντας ὑπ' ἑωυτῷ εἶχε καταστρεψάμενος ὁ Κροῖσος· εἰσὶ δὲ οἶδε [Λυδοί], Φρύγες, Μυσοί, Μαριανδυνοί, Χάλυβες, Πα- 5 φλαγόνες, Θρήϊκες, οἱ Θυνοί τε καὶ Βιθυνοί, Κᾶρες, Ἴωνες, Δωριέες, Αἰολέες, Πάμφυλοι. —

29. κατεστραμμένων δὲ τούτων καὶ προσεπικτωμένου Κροῖσου Λυδοῖσι ἀπικνέονται ἐς Σάρδις ἀκμαζού-



σας πλούτῳ ἄλλοι τε οἱ πάντες ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος σοφισταί, οἳ τούτου τὸν χρόνον ἐτύγχανον ἔόντες, ὡς ἕκα-  
 5 στος αὐτῶν ἀπικνέοιτο, καὶ δὴ καὶ Σόλων ἀνὴρ Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς Ἀθηναίοισι νόμους κελεύσασι ποιήσας ἀπεδήμησε ἕτεα δέκα, κατὰ θεωρίας πρόφασιν ἐκπλώσας, ἵνα δὴ μή τινα τῶν νόμων ἀναγκασθῆ λῦσαι τῶν ἔθετο αὐτοὶ γὰρ οὐκ οἰοί τε ἦσαν αὐτὸ ποιῆσαι Ἀθηναῖοι.  
 10 ὀρκίοισι γὰρ μεγάλοισι κατείχοντο δέκα ἕτεα χρήσεσθαι νόμοισι, τοὺς ἂν σφισι Σόλων θῆται.

30. Αὐτῶν δὴ ὧν τούτων καὶ τῆς θεωρίας ἐκδημήσας ὁ Σόλων εἵνεκεν ἐς Αἴγυπτον ἀπῆκετο παρὰ Ἀμασιν καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐς Σάρδις παρὰ Κροῖσον. ἀπικόμενος δὲ ἐξεινίζετο ἐν τοῖσι βασιληῖοισι ὑπὸ τοῦ Κροῖσου.  
 5 μετὰ δὲ ἡμέρη τρίτη ἢ τετάρτη, κελεύσαντος Κροῖσου, τὸν Σόλωνα θεράποντες περιῆγον κατὰ τοὺς θησαυρούς, καὶ ἐπεδείκνυσαν πάντα ἔοντα μεγάλα τε καὶ ὄλβια. θηησάμενον δὲ μιν τὰ πάντα καὶ σκεψάμενον, ὡς οἱ κατὰ καιρὸν ἦν, εἶρετο ὁ Κροῖσος τάδε· Ἐεῖνε Ἀθη-  
 10 ναῖε, παρ' ἡμέας γὰρ περὶ σέο λόγος ἀπῖκται πολλὸς καὶ σοφίης εἵνεκεν τῆς σῆς καὶ πλάνης, ὡς φιλοσοφέων γῆν πολλὴν θεωρίας εἵνεκεν ἐπελήλυθας· νῦν ὧν ἴμερος ἐπείρεσθαι μοι ἐπῆλθε, εἴ τινα ἤδη πάντων εἶδες ὀλβιώτατον; Ὁ μὲν, ἐλπίζων εἶναι ἀνθρώπων ὀλβιώτατος,  
 15 ταῦτα ἐπειρώτα· Σόλων δὲ οὐδὲν ὑποθωπεύσας, ἀλλὰ τῷ ἔοντι χρησάμενος, λέγει· ὦ βασιλεῦ, Τέλλον Ἀθηναῖον. Ἀποθωυμάσας δὲ Κροῖσος τὸ λεχθὲν εἶρετο ἐπιστρεφέως· Κοίη δὴ κρίνεις Τέλλον εἶναι ὀλβιώτατον;  
 Ὁ δὲ εἶπε· Τέλλῳ τούτο μὲν, τῆς πόλιος εὖ ἠκούσης,  
 20 παῖδες ἦσαν καλοὶ τε κάγαθοί, καὶ σφι εἶδε ἅπασι τέκνα ἐκγενόμενα καὶ πάντα παραμείναντα, τούτο δὲ τοῦ βίου εὖ ἠκοντι, ὡς τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν, τελευτῆ τοῦ βίου λαμπροτάτη ἐπεγένετο· γενομένης γὰρ Ἀθηναίοισι μάχης πρὸς τοὺς ἀστυγείτονας ἐν Ἐλευσῖνι, βοηθήσας καὶ  
 25 τροπὴν ποιήσας τῶν πολεμίων ἀπέθανε κάλλιστα, καὶ

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

5 Ὅ δὲ εἶπε· ὦ Κροῖσε, ἐπιστάμενόν με τὸ θεῖον πᾶν  
 ἔον φθονερόν τε καὶ ταραχῶδες ἐπειρωτᾶς ἀνθρωπηῶν  
 πρηγμάτων πέρι; ἐν γὰρ τῷ μακρῷ χρόνῳ πολλὰ μὲν  
 ἔστι ἰδέειν τὰ μή τις ἐθέλει, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ παθεῖν. ἐς  
 γὰρ ἑβδομήκοντα ἔτεα οὖρον τῆς ζῆς ἀνθρώπῳ προτί-  
 10 θημι. οὗτοι ἔόντες ἐνιαυτοὶ ἑβδομήκοντα παρέχονται  
 ἡμέρας διηκοσίας καὶ πεντακισχιλίας καὶ δισμυρίας, ἐμ-  
 βολίμου μηνὸς μὴ γενομένου· εἰ δὲ δὴ ἐθελήσει τούτε-  
 ρον τῶν ἑτέων μηνὶ μακρότερον γίνεσθαι, ἵνα δὴ αἰ-  
 ῶραι συμβαίνωσι παραγινόμεναι ἐς τὸ δέον, μῆνες μὲν  
 15 παρὰ τὰ ἑβδομήκοντα ἔτεα οἱ ἐμβόλιμοι γίνονται τριή-  
 κοντα πέντε, ἡμέραι δὲ ἐκ τῶν μηνῶν τούτων χίλιαι πεν-  
 τήκοντα. τουτέων τῶν ἀπασέων ἡμερέων τῶν ἐς τὰ ἑβδο-  
 μήκοντα ἔτεα ἑουσέων πεντήκοντα καὶ διηκοσίων καὶ  
 ἑξακισχιλιέων καὶ δισμυριέων, ἢ ἑτέρη αὐτέων τῇ ἑτέρῃ  
 20 ἡμέρῃ τὸ παράπαν οὐδὲν ὁμοῖον προσάγει πρῆγμα. οὐ-  
 τῶ ὦν, ὦ Κροῖσε, πᾶν ἔστι ἄνθρωπος συμφορῆ. ἐμοὶ  
 δὲ σὺ καὶ πλουτέειν μὲν μέγα φαίνεαι καὶ βασιλεὺς εἶ-  
 ναι πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων· ἐκεῖνο δὲ το εἶρέό με, οὐκῶ σε  
 ἐγὼ λέγω, πρὶν ἂν τελευτήσαντα καλῶς τὸν αἰῶνα πύ-  
 25 θωμαι. οὐ γάρ τοι ὁ μέγα πλούσιος μᾶλλον τοῦ ἐπ’  
 ἡμέρην ἔχοντος ὀλβιώτερός ἐστι, εἰ μή οἱ τύχη ἐπίσποι-  
 το, πάντα καλὰ ἔχοντα τελευτήσαι εὖ τὸν βίον. πολλοὶ  
 μὲν γὰρ ζάπλουτοι ἀνθρώπων ἀνόλβιοί εἰσι, πολλοὶ δὲ  
 μετρίως ἔχοντες βίου εὐτυχέες. ὁ μὲν δὴ μέγα πλούσιος,  
 30 ἀνόλβιος δέ, δυοῖσι προέχει τοῦ εὐτυχέος μούνοισι, οὗτος  
 δὲ τοῦ πλουσίου καὶ ἀνολβίου πολλοῖσι· ὁ μὲν ἐπιθυ-  
 μίην ἐκτελέσαι καὶ ἄτην μεγάλην προσπεσοῦσαν ἐνεῖκαι  
 δυνατώτερος, ὁ δὲ τοισίδε προέχει ἐκείνου, ἄτην μὲν καὶ  
 ἐπιθυμίην οὐκ ὁμοίως δυνατὸς ἐκείνῳ ἐνεῖκαι, ταῦτα δὲ  
 35 ἢ εὐτυχίῃ οἱ ἀπερύκει, ἄπηρος δὲ ἐστι, ἄνουσος, ἀπα-  
 θῆς κακῶν, εὐπαις, εὐειδής· εἰ δὲ πρὸς τούτοις ἔτι τε-  
 λευτήσει τὸν βίον εὖ, οὗτος ἐκεῖνος τὸν σὺ ζητεῖς, ὀλβιος  
 κεκλήσθαι ἄξιός ἐστι· πρὶν δ’ ἂν τελευτήσῃ, ἐπισχέειν

μηδὲ καλέειν κω ὄλβιον, ἀλλ' εὐτυχέα. τὰ πάντα μὲν νυν  
 ταῦτα συλλαβεῖν ἄνθρωπον εὐντα ἀδύνατόν ἐστι, ὥσπερ 40  
 χώρα οὐδεμία καταρκέει πάντα ἐωυτῇ παρέχουσα, ἀλλὰ  
 ἄλλο μὲν ἔχει, ἑτέρου δὲ ἐπιδέεται· ἢ δὲ ἂν τὰ πλείιστα  
 ἔχη, ἀρίστη αὕτη. ὡς δὲ καὶ ἀνθρώπου σῶμα ἐν οὐδὲν  
 αὐταρχές ἐστι· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔχει, ἄλλου δὲ ἐνδεές ἐστι. ὃς  
 δ' ἂν αὐτῶν πλείιστα ἔχων διατελέη καὶ ἔπειτα τελευτή- 45  
 ση εὐχαρίστως τὸν βίον, οὗτος παρ' ἐμοὶ τὸ οὐνομα τοῦ-  
 το, ὦ βασιλεῦ, δίκαιός ἐστι φέρεσθαι. σκοπέειν δὲ χρῆ  
 παντὸς χρήματος τὴν τελευτὴν κῆ ἀποβήσεται· πολλοῖ-  
 σι γὰρ δὴ ὑποδέξας ὄλβον ὁ θεὸς προῤῥίζους ἀνέτρεψε.

73. Ἐστρατεύετο δὲ ὁ Κροῖσος ἐπὶ τὴν Καππαδο-  
 κίην τῶνδε εἵνεκα, καὶ γῆς ἱμέρω προσκτήσασθαι πρὸς  
 τὴν ἐωυτοῦ μοῖραν βουλόμενος, καὶ μάλιστα τῷ χρηστη-  
 ρίῳ πίσυνος εἶναι καὶ τίσασθαι θέλων ὑπὲρ Ἀστυάγεω  
 Κῦρον. Ἀστυάγεα γὰρ τὸν Κυαξάρει, εὐντα Κροῖσου 5  
 μὲν γαμβρόν, Μήδων δὲ βασιλέα, Κῦρος ὁ Καμβύσειω  
 καταστρεψάμενος εἶχε, γενόμενον γαμβρόν Κροῖσω ὧδε.  
 Σκυθέων τῶν νομάδων εἶλη ἀνδρῶν στασιάσασα ὑπεξ-  
 ἤλθε ἐς γῆν τὴν Μηδικήν· ἐτυράννευε δὲ τὸν χρόνον  
 τοῦτον Μήδων Κυαξάρης ὁ Φραόρτεω τοῦ Δηϊόκεω, 10  
 ὃς τοὺς Σκύθας τούτους τὸ μὲν πρῶτον περιεῖπε εἶ ὡς  
 εὐντας ἰκέτας· ὥστε δὲ περὶ πολλοῦ ποιούμενος αὐτούς,  
 παῖδάς σφι παρέδωκε τὴν γλῶσσάν τε ἐκμαθέειν καὶ  
 τὴν τέχνην τῶν τόξων. χρόνου δὲ γενομένου καὶ αἰεὶ  
 φοιτεόντων τῶν Σκυθέων ἐπ' ἄγρην καὶ αἰεὶ τι φερόν- 15  
 των, καὶ κοτε συνήνεικε ἐλεῖν σφέας μηδέν· νοστήσαν-  
 τας δὲ αὐτοὺς κεινῆσι χερσὶ ὁ Κυαξάρης (ἦν γάρ, ὡς  
 διέδεξε, ὀργὴν ἄκρος) τρηχέως κάρτα περιέσπε ἀεικείη.  
 οἱ δὲ ταῦτα πρὸς Κυαξάρει παθόντες, ὥστε ἀνάξια  
 σφέων αὐτῶν πεπονθότες, ἐβουλεύσαντο τῶν παρα 20  
 σφίσι διδασκομένων παίδων ἕνα κατακόψαι, σκευάσαν-  
 τες δὲ αὐτόν, ὥσπερ ἐώθεσαν καὶ τὰ θηρία σκευάζειν,  
 Κυαξάρει δοῦναι φέροντες ὡς ἄγρην δῆθεν, δόντες δὲ

τὴν ταχίστην κομίζεσθαι παρὰ Ἀλυάττεα τὸν Σαδυ-  
 25 ἄπτεω ἐς Σάρδεις. ταῦτα καὶ δὴ ἐγένετο· καὶ γὰρ Κυα-  
 ξάρης καὶ οἱ παρεόντες δαιτυμόνες τῶν κρεῶν τούτων  
 ἐπάσαντο, καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι ταῦτα ποιήσαντες Ἀλυάπτεω  
 ἰκέται ἐγένοντο.

74. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα (οὐ γὰρ δὴ ὁ Ἀλυάπτης ἐξεδί-  
 δου τοὺς Σκύθας ἐξαιτέοντι Κυαξάρει) πόλεμος τοῖσι  
 Λυδοῖσι καὶ τοῖσι Μήδοισι ἐγεγόνεε ἐπ' ἕτεα πέντε, ἐν  
 τοῖσι πολλάκις μὲν οἱ Μῆδοι τοὺς Λυδοὺς ἐνίκησαν,  
 5 πολλάκις δὲ οἱ Λυδοὶ τοὺς Μήδους· ἐν δὲ καὶ νυκτομα-  
 χίην τινὰ ἐποίησαντο. διαφέρουσι δὲ σφι ἐπὶ ἴσης τὸν  
 πόλεμον, τῷ ἕκτῳ ἔτει συμβολῆς γενομένης, συνήνεικε  
 ὥστε τῆς μάχης συνεστεώσης τὴν ἡμέρην ἑξαπίνης νύ-  
 κτα γενέσθαι. τὴν δὲ μεταλλαγὴν ταύτην τῆς ἡμέρης  
 10 Θαλῆς ὁ Μιλήσιος τοῖσι Ἴωσι προηγόρευσε ἕσεσθαι  
 οὖρον προθέμενος ἐνιαυτὸν τοῦτον, ἐν τῷ δὴ καὶ ἐγένετο  
 ἡ μεταβολή. οἱ δὲ Λυδοὶ τε καὶ οἱ Μῆδοι, ἐπεὶ τε εἶδον  
 νύκτα ἀντὶ ἡμέρης γινομένην, τῆς μάχης τε ἐπαύσαντο  
 καὶ μᾶλλον τι ἔσπευσαν καὶ ἀμφότεροι εἰρήνην ἐωυτοῖσι  
 15 γενέσθαι. οἱ δὲ συμβιβάσαντες αὐτοὺς ἦσαν οἶδε, Συ-  
 ἔννεσις τε ὁ Κίλιξ καὶ Λαβύνητος ὁ Βαβυλώνιος. οὗτοί  
 σφι καὶ τὸ ὄρκιον οἱ σπεύσαντες γενέσθαι ἦσαν, καὶ  
 γάμων ἐπαλλαγὴν ἐποίησαν· Ἀλυάττεα γὰρ ἔγνωσαν  
 δοῦναι τὴν θυγατέρα Ἀρύηνιν Ἀστυάγει τῷ Κυαξάρει  
 20 παιδί· ἄνευ γὰρ ἀναγκαίης ἰσχυρῆς συμβάσιες ἰσχυραὶ  
 οὐκ ἐθέλουσι συμμένειν. ὄρκια δὲ ποιέεται ταῦτα τὰ  
 ἔθνεα τάπερ τε Ἕλληνες, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις, ἐπεὰν τοὺς  
 βραχίονας ἐπιτάμονται ἐς τὴν ὀμοχροίην, τὸ αἷμα ἀνα-  
 λείχουσι ἀλλήλων.

75. Τοῦτον δὴ ὦν τὸν Ἀστυάγεα Κῦρος ἔοντα ἐωυ-  
 τοῦ μητροπάτορα καταστρεψάμενος ἔσχε δι' αἰτίην τὴν  
 ἐγὼ ἐν τοῖσι ὀπίσω λόγοισι σημανέω. τὰ Κροῖσος ἐπι-  
 μεμφόμενος τῷ Κύρῳ, ἔς τε τὰ χρηστήρια ἔπεμπε. εἰ  
 5 στρατεύηται ἐπὶ Πέρσας, καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀπικομένου χρη-

σμοῦ κιβδήλου, ἐλπίσας πρὸς ἑωυτοῦ τὸν χρησμὸν εἶναι, ἐστρατεύετο ἐς τὴν Περσέων μοῖραν. \* \* \*

95. ἘΠΙΔΙΖΗΤΑΙ δὲ δὴ τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν ἡμῖν ὁ λόγος τὸν τε Κῦρον, ὅστις ἐὼν τὴν Κροίσου ἀρχὴν κατεῖλε, καὶ τοὺς Πέρσας, ὅτεω τρόπῳ ἠγήσαντο τῆς Ἀσίης. Ὡς ὦν Περσέων μετεξέτεροι λέγουσι οἱ μὴ βουλόμενοι σεμνοῦν τὰ περὶ Κῦρον, ἀλλὰ τὸν ἑόντα λέγειν λόγον, 5 κατὰ ταῦτα γράψω, ἐπιστάμενος περὶ Κύρου καὶ τριφασίας ἄλλας λόγων ὁδοὺς φῆναι. Ἀσσυρίων ἀρχόντων τῆς ἄνω Ἀσίης ἐπ' ἕτεα εἴκοσι καὶ πεντακόσια, πρῶτοι ἀπ' αὐτῶν Μῆδοι ἤρξαντο ἀπίστασθαι· καί κως οὔτοι περὶ τῆς ἐλευθερίας μαχεσάμενοι τοῖσι Ἀσ- 10 συρίοισι ἐγένοντο ἄνδρες ἀγαθοί, καὶ ἀπωσάμενοι τὴν δουλοσύνην ἠλευθερώθησαν. μετὰ δὲ τούτους καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἔθνεα ἐποίηε τωῦτό τοῖσι Μήδοισι.

96. Ἐόντων δὲ αὐτονόμων πάντων ἀνὰ τὴν ἠπειρον, ὧδε αὐτὶς ἐς τυραννίδας περιῆλθον. ἀνὴρ ἐν τοῖσι Μήδοισι ἐγένετο σοφός, τῷ οὖνομα ἦν Δηϊόκης, παῖς δ' ἦν Φραόρτεω. οὔτος ὁ Δηϊόκης, ἐρασθεὶς τυραννίδος, ἐποίηε τοιάδε. κατοικημένων τῶν Μήδων κατὰ 5 κώμας, ἐν τῇ ἑωυτοῦ ἐὼν καὶ πρότερον δόκιμος καὶ μᾶλλον τι καὶ προθυμότερον δικαιοσύνην ἐπιθέμενος ἤσκει· καὶ ταῦτα μέντοι εὐούσης ἀνομίης πολλῆς ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν Μηδικὴν ἐποίηε, ἐπιστάμενος ὅτι τῷ δικαίῳ τὸ ἄδικον πολέμιόν ἐστι. οἱ δὲ ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς κώμης Μῆ- 10 δοι, ὀρῶντες αὐτοῦ τοὺς τρόπους, δικαστὴν μιν ἑωυτῶν αἰρέοντο. ὁ δὲ δὴ, οἷα μνεώμενος ἀρχὴν, ἰθύς τε καὶ δίκαιος ἦν. ποιέων τε ταῦτα ἔπαινον εἶχε οὐκ ὀλίγον πρὸς τῶν πολιτέων οὔτω, ὥστε πυνθανόμενοι οἱ ἐν τῆσι ἄλ- 15 λησι κώμησι ὡς Δηϊόκης εἶη ἀνὴρ μῦνος κατὰ τὸ ὀρθὸν δικάζων, πρότερον περιπίπτοντες ἀδίκοισι γνώμησι, τότε ἐπεὶ τε ἤκουσαν, ἄσμενοι ἐφοίτεον παρὰ τὸν Δηϊόκεα καὶ αὐτοὶ δικασόμενοι· τέλος δὲ οὐδενὶ ἄλλῳ ἐπετράποντο.

97. Πλεῦνος δὲ αἰεὶ γινομένου τοῦ ἐπιφοιτέοντος,

οἷα πυνθανομένων τὰς δίκας ἀποβαίνειν κατὰ τὸ εἶν, γνοὺς ὁ Δηϊόκης ἐς ἑωυτὸν πᾶν ἀνακείμενον, οὔτε κατίζειν ἔτι ἤθελε ἔνθαπερ πρότερον προκατίζων ἐδίκαζε, 5 οὔτ' ἔφη δικᾶν ἔτι· οὐ γάρ οἱ λυσιτελέειν, τῶν ἑωυτοῦ ἐξημεληκότα τοῖσι πέλας δι' ἡμέρης δικάζειν. εἰσῆς ὧν ἀρπαγῆς καὶ ἀνομίης ἔτι πολλῶ μᾶλλον ἀνὰ τὰς κώμας ἢ πρότερον ἦν, συνελέχθησαν οἱ Μῆδοι ἐς τούτῳ καὶ ἐδίδουσαν σφίσι λόγον, λέγοντες περὶ τῶν κατηκόν- 10 των. ὡς δ' ἐγὼ δοκέω, μάλιστα ἔλεγον οἱ τοῦ Δηϊόκεω φίλοι· Οὐ γὰρ δὴ τρόπῳ τῷ παρεόντι χρεώμενοι δυνατοὶ εἶμεν οἰκέειν τὴν χώραν, φέρε στήσωμεν ἡμέων αὐτῶν βασιλέα· καὶ οὔτω ἢ τε χώρα εὐνομήσεται, καὶ αὐτοὶ πρὸς ἔργα τρεψόμεθα, οὐδὲ ὑπ' ἀνομίης ἀνάστα- 15 τοι ἐσόμεθα. Ταῦτά κη λέγοντες πείθουσι ἑωυτοὺς βασιλεύεσθαι.

98. Αὐτίκα δὲ προβαλλομένων ὄντινα στήσονται βασιλέα, ὁ Δηϊόκης ἦν πολλὸς ὑπὸ παντὸς ἀνδρὸς καὶ προβαλλόμενος καὶ αἰνεόμενος, ἐς ὃ τοῦτον καταινέουσι βασιλέα σφίσι εἶναι. ὁ δ' ἐκέλευε αὐτοὺς οἰκία τε ἑω- 5 τῷ ἄξια τῆς βασιληΐης οἰκοδομῆσαι καὶ κρατῦναι αὐτὸν δορυφόροισι. ποιεῦσι δὴ ταῦτα οἱ Μῆδοι· οἰκοδομέουσί τε γὰρ αὐτῷ οἰκία μεγάλα τε καὶ ἰσχυρά, ἵνα αὐτὸς ἔφρασε τῆς χώρας, καὶ δορυφόρους αὐτῷ ἐπιτρέπουσι ἐκ πάντων Μήδων καταλέξασθαι. ὁ δὲ ὡς ἔσχε τὴν ἀρ- 10 χήν, τοὺς Μήδους ἠνάγκασε ἐν πόλισμα ποιήσασθαι, καὶ τοῦτο περιστέλλοντας τῶν ἄλλων ἦσσον ἐπιμέλεσθαι. πειθομένων δὲ καὶ ταῦτα τῶν Μήδων οἰκοδομέει τείχεα μεγάλα τε καὶ καρτερά ταῦτα, τὰ νῦν Ἀγβάτανα κέκληται, ἕτερον ἑτέρῳ κύκλῳ ἐνεστεῶτα. μεμηχάνηται 15 δὲ οὔτω τοῦτο τὸ τεῖχος, ὥστε ὁ ἕτερος τοῦ ἑτέρου κύκλος τοῖσι προμαχεῶσι μούνοισί ἐστι ὑψηλότερος. τὸ μὲν κού τι καὶ τὸ χωρίον συμμαχέει, κολωνὸς εἶναι, ὥστε τοιοῦτο εἶναι· τὸ δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον τι ἐπετηδεύθη, κύκλων εἶναι τῶν συναπάντων ἑπτά· ἐν δὲ τῷ τελευταίῳ τὰ

Βασιλήϊα ἔνεστι καὶ οἱ θησαυροί. τὸ δὲ αὐτῶν μέγιστόν 20  
 ἔστι τείχος κατὰ τὸν Ἀθηνέων κύκλον μάλιστά κη τὸ  
 μέγαθος. τοῦ μὲν δὴ πρώτου κύκλου οἱ προμαχεῶνές  
 εἶσι λευκοί, τοῦ δὲ δευτέρου μέλανες, τρίτου δὲ κύκλου  
 φοινίκεοι, τετάρτου δὲ κυάνεοι, πέμπτου δὲ σανδαράκι-  
 νοι. οὕτω πάντων τῶν κύκλων οἱ προμαχεῶνες ἦνθι- 25  
 σμένοι εἰσὶ φαρμάκοισι· δύο δὲ οἱ τελευταῖοί εἶσι ὁ μὲν  
 καταργυρωμένους, ὁ δὲ κατακεχρυσωμένους ἔχων τοὺς  
 προμαχεῶνας.

99. Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ὁ Δηϊόκης ἐωυτῷ τε ἐτείχεε καὶ  
 περὶ τὰ ἐωυτοῦ οἰκία, τὸν δὲ ἄλλον δῆμον πέριξ ἐκέλευε  
 τὸ τείχος οἰκέειν. οἰκοδομηθέντων δὲ πάντων κόσμον  
 τόνδε Δηϊόκης πρῶτός ἐστι ὁ καταστησάμενος, μήτε  
 ἐσιέναι παρὰ βασιλέα μηδένα, δι' ἀγγέλων δὲ πάντα 5  
 χρέεσθαι, ὁρᾶσθαι τε βασιλέα ὑπὸ μηδενός, πρὸς τε  
 τούτοισι ἔτι γελᾶν τε καὶ πτύειν ἀντίον καὶ ἅπασι τοῦτό  
 γε εἶναι αἰσχρόν. ταῦτα δὲ περὶ ἐωυτὸν ἐσέμνυε τῶνδε  
 εἵνεκεν, ὅπως ἂν μὴ ὀρέοντες οἱ ὀμήλικες ἔοντες σύντρο-  
 φοί τε ἐκείνῳ καὶ οἰκίῃς οὐ φλαυροτέρῃς, οὐδὲ ἐς ἀνδρα- 10  
 γαθίην λειπόμενοι, λυπεοίατο καὶ ἐπιβουλεύοιεν, ἀλλ'  
 ἕτεροῖός σφι δοκέοι εἶναι μὴ ὀρέωσι.

100. Ἐπεὶ τε δὲ ταῦτα διεκόσμησε καὶ ἐκράτυνε  
 ἐωυτὸν τῇ τυραννίδι, ἣν τὸ δίκαιον φυλάσσων χαλεπός·  
 καὶ τὰς τε δίκας γράφοντες εἴσω παρ' ἐκεῖνον ἐσεπέμ-  
 πεσκον, καὶ ἐκεῖνος διακρίνων τὰς ἐσφερομένας ἐκπέμ-  
 πεσκε. ταῦτα μὲν κατὰ τὰς δίκας ἐποίηε, τὰ δὲ δὴ ἄλλα 5  
 ἐκεκοσμέατό οἱ· εἴ τινα πυνθάνοιτο ὑβρίζοντα, τοῦτον  
 ὅπως μεταπέμψαιτο, κατ' ἀξίην ἐκάστου ἀδικήματος ἐδι-  
 καίειν, καὶ οἱ κατάσκοποί τε καὶ κατήκοοι ἦσαν ἀνὰ  
 πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν τῆς ἡρχε.

101. Δηϊόκης μὲν νυν τὸ Μηδικὸν ἔθνος συνέστρεψε  
 μόνον, καὶ τούτου ἦρξε. ἔστι δὲ Μήδων τοσάδε γένεα,  
 Βουσαί, Παρητακηνοί, Στρούχατες, Ἀριζαντοί, Βούδιοι,  
 Μάγοι. γένεα μὲν δὴ Μήδων ἐστὶ τοσάδε.



102. Δηϊόκεω δὲ παῖς γίνεται Φραόρτης, ὃς τελευ-  
 τήσαντος Δηϊόκεω, βασιλεύσαντος τρία καὶ πεντήκοντα  
 ἔτεα, παρεδέξατο τὴν ἀρχὴν· παραδεξάμενος δὲ οὐκ  
 ἀπεχρήτο μούνων ἀρχεῖν τῶν Μήδων, ἀλλὰ στρατευσά-  
 5 μενος ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας πρώτοισί τε τούτοισι ἐπεθήκατο,  
 καὶ πρώτους Μήδων ὑπηκόους ἐποίησε. μετὰ δὲ ἔχων  
 δύο ταῦτα ἔθνεα καὶ ἀμφότερα ἰσχυρά, κατεστρέφετο  
 τὴν Ἀσίην ἀπ' ἄλλου ἐπ' ἄλλο ἰὼν ἔθνος, ἐς ὃ στρατευ-  
 σάμενος ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους καὶ Ἀσσυρίων τούτους οἱ  
 10 Νῆνον εἶχον καὶ ἦρχον πρότερον πάντων, τότε δὲ ἦσαν  
 μεμουνωμένοι μὲν συμμάχων ἅτε ἀπεστεώτων, ἄλλως  
 μέντοι ἐωυτῶν εὖ ἤκοντες, ἐπὶ τούτους δὴ στρατευσά-  
 μενος ὁ Φραόρτης αὐτὸς τε διεφθάρη, ἀρξας δύο καὶ  
 εἴκοσι ἔτεα, καὶ ὁ στρατὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ πολλός.

103. Φραόρτεω δὲ τελευτήσαντος ἐξεδέξατο Κυα-  
 ξάρης ὁ Φραόρτεω τοῦ Δηϊόκεω παῖς. οὗτος λέγεται  
 πολλὸν ἔτι γενέσθαι ἀλκιμώτερος τῶν προγόνων· καὶ  
 πρῶτός τε ἐλόχισε κατὰ τέλεα τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ, καὶ  
 5 πρῶτος διέταξε χωρὶς ἐκάστους εἶναι, τοὺς τε αἰχμοφό-  
 ρους καὶ τοὺς τοξοφόρους καὶ τοὺς ἰππέας· πρὸ τοῦ δὲ  
 ἀναμίξ ἦν πάντα ὁμοίως ἀναπεφυρμένα. οὗτος ὁ τοῖσι  
 Λυδοῖσιν ἐστι μαχεσάμενος ὅτε νύξ ἢ ἡμέρη ἐγένετό σφι  
 μαχομένοισι, καὶ ὁ τὴν Ἄλυσος ποταμοῦ ἄνω Ἀσίην πᾶ-  
 10 σαν συστήσας ἐωυτῷ. συλλέξας δὲ τοὺς ὑπ' ἐωυτῷ ἀρ-  
 χομένους πάντας ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν Νῆνον, τιμωρέων  
 τε τῷ πατρὶ καὶ τὴν πόλιν ταύτην θέλων ἐξελεῖν. καί  
 οἱ, ὡς συμβαλὼν ἐνίκησε τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους, περικατημένῳ  
 τὴν Νῆνον ἐπῆλθε Σκυθέων στρατὸς μέγας, ἅγε δὲ αὐ-  
 15 τοὺς βασιλεὺς ὁ Σκυθέων Μαδύης, Πρωτοθύεω παῖς·  
 οἱ ἐσέβαλον μὲν ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην Κιμμερίους ἐκβαλόντες  
 ἐκ τῆς Εὐρώπης, τούτοισι δὲ ἐπισπόμενοι φεύγουσι οὕτω  
 ἐς τὴν Μηδικὴν χώραν ἀπίκοντο.

104. Ἔστι δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς λίμνης τῆς Μαιήτιδος ἐπὶ  
 Φᾶσιν ποταμὸν καὶ ἐς Κόλχους τριήκοντα ἡμερέων εὖ-

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

καὶ οὕτω ἀνεσώσαντο τὴν ἀρχὴν Μῆδοι, καὶ ἐπεκράτεον τῶν περ καὶ πρότερον, καὶ τὴν τε Νῖνον εἶλον, (ὡς δὲ 10 εἶλον, ἐν ἑτέροισι λόγοισι δηλώσω) καὶ τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους ὑποχειρίους ἐποιήσαντο πλὴν τῆς Βαβυλωνίης μοίρης. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Κυαξάρης μὲν, βασιλεύσας τεσσαράκοντα ἔτεα σὺν τοῖσι Σκύθαι ἤρξαν, τελευτᾷ.

107. Ἐκδέκεται δὲ Ἀστυάγης ὁ Κυαξάρεω παῖς τὴν βασιληΐην. καὶ οἱ ἐγένετο θυγάτηρ τῇ οὐνομα ἔθετο Μανδάνην. (τὴν ἐδόκεε Ἀστυάγης ἐν τῷ ὑπνω) οὐρῆσαι τοσοῦτον, ὥστε πλῆσαι μὲν τὴν ἐωυτοῦ πόλιν, ἐπικατα- 5 κλύσαι δὲ καὶ τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν. ὑπερθέμενος δὲ τῶν Μάγων τοῖσι ὄνειροπόλοισι τὸ ἐνύπνιον, ἐφοβήθη, παρ' αὐτῶν αὐτὰ ἕκαστα μαθῶν. μετὰ δὲ τὴν Μανδάνην ταύτην εἶδον ἤδη ἀνδρὸς ὠραίην, Μήδων μὲν τῶν ἐωυτοῦ ἀξίων οὐδενὶ διδοῖ γυναῖκα, δεδοικῶς τὴν ὄψιν· ὁ 10 δὲ Πέρσης διδοῖ τῷ οὐνομα ἦν Καμβύσης, τὸν εὗρισκε οἰκίης μὲν εὐνοτα ἀγαθῆς, τρόπου δὲ ἡσυχίου, πολλῶ ἔνερθε ἄγων αὐτὸν μέσου ἀνδρὸς Μήδου.

108. Συνοικεούσης δὲ τῷ Καμβύση τῆς Μανδάνης ὁ Ἀστυάγης τῷ πρώτῳ ἔτει εἶδε ἄλλην ὄψιν· ἐδόκεε δὲ οἱ ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων τῆς θυγατρὸς ταύτης φῦναι ἄμπελον, τὴν δὲ ἄμπελον ἐπισχεῖν τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν. ἰδὼν δὲ 5 τοῦτο καὶ ὑπερθέμενος τοῖσι ὄνειροπόλοισι μετεπέμψατο ἐκ τῶν Περσέων τὴν θυγατέρα ἐπίτεκα εἶδον, ἀπικομένην δὲ ἐφύλασσε βουλόμενος τὸ γεννώμενον ἐξ αὐτῆς διαφθεῖραι· ἐκ γὰρ οἱ τῆς ὄψιος οἱ τῶν Μάγων ὄνειροπόλοι ἐσήμαινον, ὅτι μέλλοι ὁ τῆς θυγατρὸς αὐτοῦ γό- 10 νος βασιλεύσειν ἀντὶ ἐκείνου. ταῦτα δὲ ὦν φυλασσόμενος ὁ Ἀστυάγης, ὡς ἐγένετο ὁ Κῦρος, καλέσας Ἀρπαγον, ἄνδρα οἰκῆϊον καὶ πιστότατόν τε Μήδων καὶ πάντων ἐπίτροπον τῶν ἐωυτοῦ, ἔλεγέ οἱ τοιάδε· Ἀρπαγε, πρῆγμα τὸ ἄν τοι προσθέω, μηδαμὰ παραχρήση, μηδὲ ἐμέ 15 τε παραβάλη καὶ ἄλλους ἐλόμενος ἐξ ὑστέρης ἐωυτῷ περιπέσης. λάβε τὸν Μανδάνη ἔτεκε παῖδα, φέρων δὲ ἐς

σεωυτοῦ ἀπόκτεινον· μετὰ δὲ θάψον τρόπῳ ὅτεω αὐτὸς βούλει. (Ὁ δὲ ἀμείβεται· ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὔτε ἄλλοτέ κω παρείδες ἀνδρὶ τῷδε ἄχαρι οὐδέν, φυλασσόμεθα δὲ ἐς σὲ καὶ ἐς τὸν μετέπειτα χρόνον μηδὲν ἐξαμαρτεῖν. ἀλλ' 20 εἴ τοι φίλον τοῦτο οὕτω γίνεσθαι, χρὴ δὴ τό γε ἐμὸν ὑπηρετέεσθαι ἐπιτηδέως.)

109. Τούτοισι ἀμειψάμενος ὁ Ἄρπαγος ὡς οἱ παρεδόθη τὸ παιδίον κεκοσμημένον τὴν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ, ἤϊε κλαίων ἐς τὰ οἰκία· παρελθὼν δὲ ἔφραζε τῇ ἑωυτοῦ γυναικὶ τὸν πάντα Ἄστυάγεω ῥηθέντα λόγον. ἡ δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν λεγει· Νῦν ὦν τί σοι ἐν νόῳ ἐστὶ ποιέειν ; 5 Ὁ δὲ ἀμείβεται· Οὐ τῇ ἐνετέλλετο Ἄστυάγης, οὐδ' εἰ παραφρονήσει τε καὶ μανεῖται κάκιον ἢ νῦν μαίνεται, οὐ οἱ ἔγωγε προσθήσομαι τῇ γνώμῃ, οὐδὲ ἐς φόνον τοιοῦτον ὑπηρετήσω. πολλῶν δὲ εἵνεκα οὐ φονεύσω μιν, καὶ ὅτι αὐτῷ μοι συγγενῆς ἐστὶν ὁ παῖς, καὶ ὅτι Ἄστυά- 10 γης μὲν ἐστὶ γέρον καὶ ἄπαις ἔρσενος γόνου· εἰ δὲ θελήσει τούτου τελευτήσαντος ἐς τὴν θυγατέρα ταύτην ἀναβῆναι ἢ τυραννίς, τῆς νῦν τὸν υἱὸν κτείνει δι' ἐμεῦ, ἄλλο τι ἢ λείπεται τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν ἐμοὶ κινδύνων ὁ μέγιστος ; ἀλλὰ τοῦ μὲν ἀσφαλέος εἵνεκα ἐμοὶ δεῖ τοῦτον 15 τελευτᾶν τὸν παῖδα, δεῖ μέντοι τῶν τινὰ Ἄστυάγεω αὐτοῦ φονέα γενέσθαι καὶ μὴ τῶν ἐμῶν.

110. Ταῦτα εἶπε, καὶ αὐτίκα ἄγγελον ἔπεμπε ἐπὶ τῶν βουκόλων τῶν Ἄστυάγεω τὸν ἠπίστατο νομᾶς τε ἐπιτηδεωτάτας νέμοντα καὶ οὔρεα θηριωδέστατα, τῷ οὔνομα ἦν Μιτρατάδης, συνοίκεε δὲ ἑωυτοῦ συνδούλῳ, οὔνομα δὲ τῇ γυναικὶ ἦν, τῇ συνοίκεε, Κυνῶ κατὰ τὴν 5 Ἑλλήνων γλῶσσαν, κατὰ δὲ τὴν Μηδικὴν Σπακῶ· τὴν γὰρ κύνα καλέουσι σπάκα Μῆδοι. αἱ δὲ ὑπώρεαί εἰσι τῶν οὔρεων, ἐνθα τὰς νομᾶς τῶν βοῶν εἶχε οὗτος δὴ ὁ βουκόλος, πρὸς βορέω τε ἀνέμου τῶν Ἀγβατάνων καὶ πρὸς τοῦ πόντου τοῦ Εὐξείνου. ταύτη μὲν γὰρ ἡ Μη- 10 δικὴ χώρα πρὸς Σασπεύρων ὄρεινή ἐστὶ κάρτα καὶ ὑψη-

λή τε καὶ ἴδησι συνηρεφής, ἢ δὲ ἄλλη Μηδικὴ χώρα  
 ἐστὶ πᾶσα ἄπεδος. ἐπεὶ ὦν ὁ βουκόλος σπουδῇ πολλῇ  
 καλεόμενος ἀπύκετο, ἔλεγε ὁ Ἄρπαγος τάδε· Κελεύει  
 15 σε Ἀστυάγης τὸ παιδίον τοῦτο λαβόντα θεῖναι ἐς τὸ  
 ἐρημότατον τῶν οὐρέων, ὅπως ἂν τάχιστα διαφθα-  
 ρεῖη. καὶ τάδε τοι ἐκέλευσε εἰπεῖν, ἣν μὴ ἀποκτείνης  
 αὐτό, ἀλλὰ τῷ τρόπῳ περιποιήσῃ, ὀλέθρῳ τῷ κα-  
 κίστῳ σε διαχρήσεσθαι· ἐπορᾶν δὲ ἐκκείμενον διατέ-  
 20 ταγμαὶ ἐγώ.

111. Ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ βουκόλος καὶ ἀναλαβὼν τὸ  
 παιδίον ἦϊε τὴν αὐτὴν ὀπίσω ὁδόν, καὶ ἀπικνέεται ἐς τὴν  
 ἔπαυλιν. τῷ δ' ἄρα καὶ αὐτῷ ἡ γυνή, ἐπίτεξ ἐοῦσα πᾶ-  
 σαν ἡμέρην, τότε κως κατὰ δαίμονα τίκτει, οἰχομένου  
 5 τοῦ βουκόλου ἐς πόλιν. ἦσαν δὲ ἐν φροντίδι ἀμφότεροι  
 ἀλλήλων πέρι, ὁ μὲν τοῦ τόκου τῆς γυναικὸς ἀρρώδεων,  
 ἡ δὲ γυνή, ὅ τι οὐκ ἐωθῶς ὁ Ἄρπαγος μεταπέμψαιτο  
 αὐτῆς τὸν ἄνδρα. ἐπεὶ τε δὲ ἀπονοστήσας ἐπέστη, οἷα  
 ἐξ ἀέλπτου ἰδοῦσα ἡ γυνή εἶρετο προτέρη, ὅ τι μιν οὕτω  
 10 προθύμως Ἄρπαγος μεταπέμψαιτο. ὁ δὲ εἶπε· ὦ γύν-  
 ναι, εἰδόν τε ἐς πόλιν ἔλθων καὶ ἤκουσα τὸ μήτε ἰδεῖν  
 ὄφελον, μήτε κοτὲ γενέσθαι ἐς δεσπότητας τοὺς ἡμετέρους.  
 οἶκος μὲν πᾶς Ἀρπάγου κλαυθμῷ κατείχετο· ἐγὼ δὲ  
 ἐκπλαγεὶς ἦϊα ἔσω. ὡς δὲ τάχιστα ἐσῆλθον, ὄρέω παι-  
 15 δίου προκείμενον ἀσπαῖρόν τε καὶ κραυγανόμενον, κε-  
 κοσμημένον χρυσῷ τε καὶ ἐσθῆτι ποικίλῃ. Ἄρπαγος  
 δὲ ὡς εἶδέ με, ἐκέλευε τὴν ταχίστην ἀναλαβόντα τὸ παι-  
 δίου οἴχεσθαι φέροντα, καὶ θεῖναι ἔνθα θηριωδέστατον  
 εἴη τῶν οὐρέων, φὰς Ἀστυάγεια εἶναι τὸν ταῦτα ἐπιθέ-  
 20 μένον μοι, πόλλ' ἀπειλήσας εἰ μὴ σφρα ποιήσαιμι. καὶ  
 ἐγὼ ἀναλαβὼν ἔφερον, δοκέων τῶν τινὸς οἰκετέων εἶναι·  
 οὐ γὰρ ἂν κοτε κατέδοξα, ἔνθεν γε ἦν. ἐθάμβεον δὲ  
 ὄρέων χρυσῷ τε καὶ εἵμασι κεκοσμημένον, πρὸς δὲ καὶ  
 κλαυθμὸν κατεστέωτα ἐμφανέα ἐν Ἀρπάγου. καὶ πρόκα  
 25 τε δὴ κατ' ὁδὸν πυνθάνομαι τὸν πάντα λόγον θεράπον-

τος, ὃς ἐμὲ προπέμπων ἔξω πόλιος ἐνεχείρισε τὸ βρέφος, ὡς ἄρα Μανδάνης τε εἶη παῖς τῆς Ἀστυάγεω θυγατρὸς καὶ Καμβύσειω τοῦ Κύρου, καὶ μιν Ἀστυάγης ἐντέλλεται ἀποκτεῖναι. νῦν τε ὅδε ἐστί.

112. Ἄμα δὲ ταῦτα ἔλεγε ὁ βουκόλος καὶ ἐκκαλύψας ἀπεδείκνυε. ἢ δὲ ὡς εἶδε τὸ παιδίον μέγα τε καὶ εὖειδὲς ἔόν, δακρύσασα καὶ λαβομένη τῶν γουνάτων τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἔχρηζε μηδεμιῇ τέχνῃ ἐκθεῖναι μιν, ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἔφη οἷός τ' εἶναι ἄλλως αὐτὰ ποιέειν, ἐπιφοιτήσειν γὰρ κατα- 5 σκόπους ἐξ Ἀρπάγου ἐποψομένους, ἀπολέεσθαι τε κάκιστα, ἣν μή σφρα ποιήσῃ. ὡς δὲ οὐκ ἔπειθε ἄρα τὸν ἄνδρα, δεύτερα λέγει ἢ γυνὴ τάδε. Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν οὐ δύναμαί σε πείθειν μὴ ἐκθεῖναι, σὺ δὲ ὧδε ποιήσον, εἰ δὴ πᾶσά γε ἀνάγκη ὀφθῆναι ἐκκείμενον. τέτοκα γὰρ καὶ 10 ἐγώ, τέτοκα δὲ τεθνεός. τοῦτο μὲν φέρων πρόθεσ, τὸν δὲ τῆς Ἀστυάγεω θυγατρὸς παῖδα ὡς ἐξ ἡμέων ἔοντα τρέφωμεν. καὶ οὔτω οὔτε σὺ ἀλώσειαι ἀδικέων τοὺς δεσπότης, οὔτε ἡμῖν κακῶς βεβουλευμένα ἔσται. ὅ τε γὰρ τεθνεὺς βασιληΐης ταφῆς κυρήσει, καὶ ὁ περιεὼν οὐκ 15 ἀπολέει τὴν ψυχὴν.

113. Κάρτα τε ἔδοξε τῷ βουκόλῳ πρὸς τὰ παρεόντα εὖ λέγειν ἢ γυνή, καὶ αὐτίκα ἐποίησε ταῦτα. τὸν μὲν ἔφερε θανατώσων παῖδα, τοῦτον μὲν παραδιδοῖ τῇ ἐωυτοῦ γυναικί, τὸν δὲ ἐωυτοῦ ἔοντα νεκρὸν λαβὼν ἔθηκε ἐς τὸ ἄγγος ἐν τῷ ἔφερε τὸν ἕτερον. κοσμήσας δὲ τῷ 5 κόσμῳ παντὶ τοῦ ἑτέρου παιδός, φέρων ἐς τὸ ἐρημότατον τῶν οὐρέων τιθεῖ. ὡς δὲ τρίτῃ ἡμέρῃ τῷ παιδίῳ ἐκκειμένῳ ἐγένετο, ἦϊε ἐς πόλιν ὁ βουκόλος, τῶν τινα προβοσκῶν φύλακον αὐτοῦ καταλιπὼν. ἐλθὼν δὲ ἐς τοῦ Ἀρπάγου, ἀποδεικνύναι ἔφη ἐτοῖμος εἶναι τοῦ παιδίου 10 τὸν νέκυν. πέμψας δὲ ὁ Ἀρπαγὸς τῶν ἐωυτοῦ δορυφόρων τοὺς πιστοτάτους, εἶδέ τε διὰ τούτων καὶ ἔθαψε τοῦ βουκόλου τὸ παιδίον. καὶ τὸ μὲν ἐτέθαπτο. τὸν δὲ ὕστερον τούτων Κῦρον ὀνομασθέντα παραλαβοῦσα

15 ἔτρεφε ἡ γυνὴ τοῦ βουκόλου, οὐνομα ἄλλο κού τι καὶ οὐ Κῦρον θεμένη.

114. Καὶ ὅτε δὴ ἦν δεκαέτης ὁ παῖς, πρῆγμα ἐς αὐτὸν τοιόνδε γενόμενον ἐξέφηνέ μιν ἔπαιζε ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ταύτῃ, ἐν τῇ ἦσαν καὶ αἱ βουκολίαι αὐται, ἔπαιζε δὲ μετ' ἄλλων ἡλίκων ἐν ὁδῷ. καὶ οἱ παῖδες παίζοντες εἵ-  
 5 λοντο ἐωυτῶν βασιλέα εἶναι τοῦτον δὴ τὸν τοῦ βουκόλου ἐπὶ κλησιν παῖδα. ὁ δὲ αὐτῶν διέταξε τοὺς μὲν οἰκίας οἰκοδομέειν, τοὺς δὲ δορυφόρους εἶναι, τὸν δὲ κού τινα αὐτῶν ὀφθαλμὸν βασιλέος εἶναι, τῷ δὲ τινι τὰς ἀγγελίας ἐσφέρειν ἐδίδου γέρας, ὡς ἐκάστῳ ἔργον προστάσσων.  
 10 εἷς δὴ τούτων τῶν παίδων συμπαίζων, ἐὼν Ἀρτεμβάρεος παῖς, ἀνδρὸς δοκίμου ἐν Μήδοισι, οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐποίησε τὸ προσταχθὲν ἐκ τοῦ Κύρου, ἐκέλευε αὐτὸν τοὺς ἄλλους παῖδας διαλαβεῖν· πειθομένων δὲ τῶν παίδων, ὁ Κῦρος τὸν παῖδα τρηχέως κάρτα περίεσπε μαστιγέων. ὁ δὲ  
 15 ἐπεὶ τε μετείθη τάχιστα, ὡς γε δὴ ἀνάξια ἐωυτοῦ παθῶν, μᾶλλον τι περιημέκτεε, κατελθὼν δὲ ἐς πόλιν πρὸς τὸν πατέρα ἀποικτίζετο τῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου ἦντησε, λέγων δὲ οὐ Κύρου (οὐ γὰρ κω ἦν τοῦτο τοῦνομα), ἀλλὰ πρὸς τοῦ βουκόλου τοῦ Ἀστυάγεω παιδός. ὁ δὲ Ἀρτεμβάρης  
 20 ὀργῇ, ὡς εἶχε, ἐλθὼν παρὰ τὸν Ἀστυάγεα καὶ ἅμα ἀγόμενος τὸν παῖδα, ἀνάρσια πρήγματα ἔφη πεπουθέναι, λέγων· ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὑπὸ τοῦ σου δούλου, βουκόλου δὲ παιδός, ὧδε περιυβρίσμεθα, — δεικνὺς τοῦ παιδός τοὺς ὤμους.

115. Ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ἰδὼν ὁ Ἀστυάγης, θέλων τιμωρῆσαι τῷ παιδὶ τιμῆς τῆς Ἀρτεμβάρεω εἵνεκα, μετεπέμπετο τὸν τε βουκόλου καὶ τὸν παῖδα. ἐπεὶ τε δὲ παρῆσαν ἀμφοτέρω, βλέψας πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ὁ Ἀστυάγης  
 5 ἔφη· Σὺ δὴ, ἐὼν τοῦδε τοιούτου ἐόντος παῖς, ἐτόλμησας τὸν τοῦδε παῖδα ἐόντος πρώτου παρ' ἐμοὶ ἀεικίῃ τοιῆδε περισπεῖν; Ὁ δὲ ἀμείβετο ὧδε· ὦ δέσποτα, ἐγὼ δὲ ταῦτα τοῦτον ἐποίησα σὺν δίκῃ· οἱ γὰρ με ἐκ τῆς κώμης

παῖδες, τῶν καὶ ὄδε ἦν, παίζοντες σφέων αὐτῶν ἐστήσαντο βασιλέα· ἐδόκεον γάρ σφι εἶναι ἐς τοῦτο ἐπιτη- 10  
δεώτατος. οἱ μὲν νυν ἄλλοι παῖδες τὰ ἐπιτασσόμενα ἐπετέλεον, οὗτος δὲ ἀνηκούστεέ τε καὶ λόγον εἶχε οὐδένα, ἐς ὃ ἔλαβε τὴν δίκην. εἰ ὦν δὴ τοῦδε εἵνεκα ἀξιόστευ κακοῦ εἶμι, ὄδε τοι πάριμι.

116. Ταῦτα λέγοντος τοῦ παιδὸς τὸν Ἄστυάγεα ἐσήϊε ἀνάγνωσις αὐτοῦ, καὶ οἱ ὅ τε χαρακτήρ τοῦ προσώπου προσφέρεσθαι ἐδόκεε ἐς ἑωυτόν, καὶ ἡ ὑπόκρισις ἐλευθεριωτέρη εἶναι, ὅ τε χρόνος τῆς ἐκθέσιος τῇ ἡλικίῃ τοῦ παιδὸς ἐδόκεε συμβαίνειν. ἐκπλαγεῖς δὲ τούτοισι 5  
ἐπὶ χρόνον ἀφθογγος ἦν· μόγις δὲ δὴ κοτε ἀνενειχθεὶς εἶπε, θέλων ἐκπέμψαι τὸν Ἀρτεμβάρεα, ἵνα τὸν βουκόλον μῦνον λαβὼν βασανίσῃ· Ἀρτέμβαρεις, ἐγὼ ταῦτα ποιήσω, ὥστε σὲ καὶ τὸν παῖδα τὸν σὸν μηδὲν ἐπιμέμφεισθαι. Τὸν μὲν δὴ Ἀρτεμβάρεα πέμπει, τὸν δὲ Κῦ- 10  
ρον ἦγον ἔσω οἱ θεράποντες, κελεύσαντος τοῦ Ἀστυαγεω. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑπελέλειπτο ὁ βουκόλος μῦνος, μουνωθέντα τάδε αὐτὸν εἶρετο ὁ Ἀστυάγης, κόθεν λάβοι τὸν παῖδα καὶ τίς εἶη ὁ παραδούς; ὁ δὲ ἐξ ἑωυτοῦ τε ἔφη γεγυμέναι καὶ τὴν τεκοῦσαν αὐτὸν ἔτι εἶναι παρ' ἑωυτῶ. 15  
Ἀστυάγης δὲ μιν οὐκ εὖ βουλευέσθαι ἔφη, ἐπιθυμέοντα ἐς ἀνάγκας μεγάλας ἀπικνέεσθαι, ἅμα τε λέγων ταῦτα ἐσήμαινε τοῖσι δορυφόροισι λαμβάνειν αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ ἀγόμενος ἐς τὰς ἀνάγκας οὕτω δὴ ἔφαινε τὸν ἔοντα λόγον. ἀρχόμενος δὴ ἀπ' ἀρχῆς διεξήϊε τῇ ἀληθειῇ χρεώμενος, 20  
καὶ κατέβαινε ἐς λιτάς τε καὶ συγγνώμην ἑωυτῶ κελεύων ἔχειν αὐτόν.

117. Ἀστυάγης δὲ τοῦ μὲν βουκόλου τὴν ἀληθειῆν ἐκφήναντος λόγον ἤδη καὶ ἐλάσσω ἐποιέετο, Ἀρπάγω δὲ καὶ μεγάλως μεμφόμενος καλέειν αὐτὸν τοὺς δορυφόρους ἐκέλευε. ὡς δὲ οἱ παρῆν ὁ Ἀρπαγος, εἶρετό μιν ὁ Ἀστυάγης· Ἀρπαγε, τέω δὴ μόρω τὸν παῖδα κατεχρή- 5  
σαο, τὸν τοι παρέδωκα ἐκ θυγατρὸς γεγονότα τῆς ἐμῆς;



Ὁ δὲ Ἄρπαγος ὡς εἶδε τὸν βουκόλον ἔνδον ἔοντα, οὐ  
 τρέπεται ἐπὶ ψευδέα ὁδόν, ἵνα μὴ ἐλεγχόμενος ἀλίσκε-  
 ται, ἀλλὰ λέγει τάδε· ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐπεὶ τε παρέλαβον  
 10 τὸ παιδίον, ἐβούλευον σκοπῶν ὅπως σοί τε ποιήσω κατὰ  
 νόον, καὶ ἐγὼ πρὸς σὲ γινόμενος ἀναμάρτητος μήτε θυ-  
 γατρι τῇ σῇ μήτε αὐτῷ σοὶ εἶην αὐθέντης. ποιέω δὴ ᾧδε·  
 καλέσας τὸν βουκόλον τόνδε παραδίδωμι τὸ παιδίον, φὰς  
 σέ τε εἶναι τὸν κελεύοντα ἀποκτεῖναι αὐτό. καὶ λέγων  
 15 τοῦτό γε οὐκ ἐψευδόμην· σὺ γὰρ ἐνετέλλεο οὕτω. παρα-  
 δίδωμι μέντοι τῷδε κατὰ τάδε, ἐντειλάμενος θείναι μιν  
 ἐς ἐρήμον οὖρος καὶ παραμένοντα φυλάσσειν ἄχρι οὗ  
 τελευτήσῃ, ἀπειλήσας παντοῖα τῷδε, ἣν μὴ τάδε ἐπιτε-  
 λέα ποιήσῃ. ἐπεὶ τε δέ, ποιήσαντος τούτου τὰ κελεύο-  
 20 μενα, ἐτελεύτησε τὸ παιδίον, πέμψας τῶν εὐνούχων τοὺς  
 πιστοτάτους καὶ εἶδον δι' ἐκείνων καὶ ἔθαψά μιν. οὕτως  
 ἔσχε, ὦ βασιλεῦ, περὶ τοῦ πρήγματος τούτου, καὶ τοι-  
 οῦτῷ μόρῳ ἐχρήσατο ὁ παῖς. Ἄρπαγος μὲν δὴ τὸν ἰθὺν  
 ἔφαινε λόγον.

118. Ἀστυάγης δὲ κρύπτων τὸν οἶ ἐνεῖχε χόλον διὰ  
 τὸ γεγονός, πρῶτα μὲν, κατάπερ ἤκουσε αὐτὸς πρὸς  
 τοῦ βουκόλου τὸ πρήγμα, πάλιν ἀπηγγέετο τῷ Ἄρπάγῳ·  
 μετὰ δέ, ὡς οἱ ἐπαλιλλόγητο, κατέβαινε λέγων, ὡς περί-  
 5 ἐστί τε ὁ παῖς καὶ τὸ γεγονός ἔχει καλῶς. Τῷ τε γὰρ  
 πεποιημένῳ, ἔφη λέγων, ἐς τὸν παῖδα τοῦτον ἔκαμνον  
 μεγάλως, καὶ θυγατρὶ τῇ ἐμῇ διαβεβλημένος οὐκ ἐν ἐλα-  
 φρῷ ἐποιεύμην. ὡς ὦν τῆς τύχης εὖ μετεστεώσης, τοῦτο  
 μὲν τὸν σεωυτοῦ παῖδα ἀπόπεμψον. παρὰ τὸν παῖδα  
 10 τὸν νεήλυδα, τοῦτο δὲ (σῶστρα γὰρ τοῦ παιδὸς μέλλω  
 θύειν, τοῖσι θεῶν τιμὴ αὕτη προσκίεται) πάρισθί μοι  
 ἐπὶ δεῖπνον.

119. Ἄρπαγος μὲν, ὡς ἤκουσε ταῦτα, προσκυνήσας  
 καὶ μεγάλα ποιησάμενος, ὅτι τε ἡ ἀμαρτὰς οἱ ἐς δέον  
 ἐγεγόνεε καὶ ὅτι ἐπὶ τύχησι χρηστῆσι ἐπὶ δεῖπνον κέ-  
 κλητο, ἦϊε ἐς τὰ οἰκία. ἐσελθὼν δὲ τὴν ταχίστην, ἣν γάρ

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

δαιτώμενον οἱ ἐκ τῆς κώμης παῖδες ἐστήσαντο βασιλέα.  
 ὁ δὲ πάντα ὅσαπερ οἱ ἀληθείῃ λόγῳ βασιλέες, ἐτελέωσε  
 10 ποιήσας· καὶ γὰρ δορυφόρους καὶ θυρωροὺς καὶ ἀγγε-  
 λιηφόρους καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ πάντα διατάξας εἶχε. καὶ νῦν  
 ἐς τί ὑμῖν ταῦτα φαίνεται φέρειν; Εἶπαν οἱ Μάγοι· Εἰ  
 μὲν περίεστί τε καὶ ἐβασίλευσε ὁ παῖς μὴ ἐκ προνοίης  
 τινός, θάρσει τε τούτου εἴνεκα καὶ θυμὸν ἔχε ἀγαθόν·  
 15 οὐ γὰρ ἔτι τὸ δεύτερον ἄρξει. παρὰ σμικρὰ γὰρ καὶ τῶν  
 λογίων ἡμῖν ἓνια κεχώρηκε, καὶ τά γε τῶν ὄνειράτων  
 ἐχόμενα τελέως ἐς ἀσθενὲς ἔρχεται. Ἀμείβεται Ἀστυά-  
 γης τοῖσδε· Καὶ αὐτός, ὦ μάγοι ταύτη πλείστος γνώ-  
 μην εἰμί, βασιλέος ὀνομασθέντος τοῦ παιδὸς ἐξήκειν τε  
 20 τὸν ὄνειρον καὶ μοι τὸν παῖδα τοῦτον εἶναι δεινὸν οὐδὲν  
 ἔτι. ὅμως μὲν γέ τοι συμβουλεύσατέ μοι, εὖ περισκεψά-  
 μενοι, τὰ μέλλει ἀσφαλέστατα εἶναι οἴκῳ τε τῷ ἐμῷ καὶ  
 ὑμῖν. Εἶπαν πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ μάγοι· ὦ βασιλεῦ, καὶ  
 αὐτοῖσι ἡμῖν περὶ πολλοῦ ἐστὶ κατορθοῦσθαι ἀρχὴν  
 25 τὴν σὴν. κείνως μὲν γὰρ ἀλλοτριοῦται ἐς τὸν παῖδα  
 τοῦτον περιουσα ἔοντα Πέρσῃν, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἔοντες Μῆ-  
 δοὶ δουλούμεθά τε καὶ λόγου οὐδενὸς γινόμεθα πρὸς  
 Περσέων, ἔοντες ξεῖνοι· σέο δ' ἐνεστεῶτος βασιλέος, ἔον-  
 τος πολιήτεω, καὶ ἄρχομεν τὸ μέρος καὶ τιμὰς πρὸς σέο  
 30 μεγάλας ἔχομεν. οὕτω ὦν πάντως ἡμῖν σέο τε καὶ τῆς  
 σῆς ἀρχῆς προοπτέον ἐστί. καὶ νῦν εἰ φοβερόν τι ἐω-  
 ρῶμεν, πᾶν ἄν σοι προεφράζομεν· νῦν δὲ ἀποσκήψαντος  
 τοῦ ἐνυπνίου ἐς φλαῦρον, αὐτοί τε θαρσέομεν καὶ σοὶ  
 ἕτερα τοιαῦτα παρακελεύομεθα. τὸν δὲ παῖδα τοῦτον  
 35 ἐξ ὀφθαλμῶν ἀπόπεμψαι ἐς Πέρσας τε καὶ τοὺς γει-  
 ναμένους.

121. Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ἀστυάγης ἐχάρη τε καὶ κα-  
 λέσας τὸν Κῦρον ἔλεγέ οἱ τάδε· ὦ παῖ, σὲ γὰρ ἐγὼ δι'  
 ὄψιν ὄνειρου οὐ τελέην ἠδίκηον, τῇ σεωυτοῦ δὲ μοίρῃ  
 περίεις· νῦν ὦν ἴθι χαίρων ἐς Πέρσας, πομποὺς δ'  
 5 ἐγὼ ἅμα πέμψω. ἔλθων δὲ ἐκεῖ πατέρα τε καὶ μητέρα

εὐρήσεις οὐ κατὰ Μιτραδάτην τε τὸν βουκόλον καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα αὐτοῦ.

122. Ταῦτα εἶπας ὁ Ἀστυάγης ἀποπέμπει τὸν Κῦρον. νοστήσαντα δέ μιν ἐς τοῦ Καμβύσεω τὰ οἰκία ἐδέξαντο οἱ γεινάμενοι, καὶ δεξάμενοι ὡς ἐπύθοντο, μέγας ἀσπάζοντο οἷα δὴ ἐπιστάμενοι αὐτίκα τότε τελευτῆσαι, ἰστόρεόν τε ὅτεω τρόπῳ περιγένοιτο. ὁ δέ σφι 5 ἔλεγε, φὰς πρὸ τοῦ μὲν οὐκ εἰδέναι, ἀλλὰ ἡμαρτηκένοι πλείστον, κατ' ὁδὸν δὲ πυθέσθαι πᾶσαν τὴν ἑωυτοῦ πάθην· ἐπίστασθαι μὲν γὰρ ὡς βουκόλου τοῦ Ἀστυάγεω εἶη παῖς, ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς κείθεν ὁδοῦ τὸν πάντα λόγον τῶν πομπῶν πυθέσθαι. τραφῆναι δὲ ἔλεγε ὑπὸ τῆς τοῦ 10 βουκόλου γυναικός, ἥϊέ τε ταύτην αἰνέων διὰ παντός, ἦν τέ οἱ ἐν τῷ λόγῳ τὰ πάντα ἡ Κυνώ. οἱ δὲ τοκέες παραλαβόντες τὸ οὔνομα τοῦτο, ἵνα θειοτέρως δοκέῃ τοῖσι Πέρσησι περιεῖναί σφι ὁ παῖς, κατέβαλον φάτιν ὡς ἐκκείμενον Κῦρον κύων ἐξέθρεψε. ἐνθεῦτεν μὲν ἡ φάτις 15 αὕτη κεχώρηκε.

123. Κύρῳ δὲ ἀνδρευμένῳ καὶ ἑόντι τῶν ἡλίκων ἀνδρειοτάτῳ καὶ προσφιλεστάτῳ προσέκειτο ὁ Ἄρπαγος δῶρα πέμπων, τίσασθαι Ἀστυάγεα ἐπιθυμέων· ἀπ' ἑωυτοῦ γὰρ ἑόντος ἰδιώτεω οὐκ ἐνεώρα τιμωρίην ἐσομένην ἐς Ἀστυάγεα, Κῦρον δὲ ὀρέων ἐπιτρεφόμενον ἐποι- 5 ἔετο σύμμαχον, τὰς πάθας τὰς Κύρου τῆσι ἑωυτοῦ ὁμοιούμενος. πρὸ δ' ἔτι τούτου τάδε οἱ κατέργαστο· ἑόντος τοῦ Ἀστυάγεω πικροῦ ἐς τοὺς Μήδους, συμμίσγων ἐνὶ ἐκάστῳ ὁ Ἄρπαγος τῶν πρώτων Μήδων ἀνέπειθε, ὡς χρὴ Κῦρον προστησαμένους τὸν Ἀστυάγεα 10 παῦσαι τῆς βασιληΐης. κατεργασμένου δὲ οἱ τούτου καὶ ἑόντος ἐτοίμου, οὕτω δὴ τῷ Κύρῳ διαιτωμένῳ ἐν Πέρσησι βουλόμενος ὁ Ἄρπαγος δηλῶσαι τὴν ἑωυτοῦ γνώμην, ἄλλως μὲν οὐδαμῶς εἶχε ἅτε τῶν ὁδῶν φυλασσομένων, ὁ δὲ ἐπιτεχνᾶται τοιόνδε. λαγὸν μηχανησάμενος, 15 καὶ ἀνασχίσας τούτου τὴν γαστέρα καὶ οὐδὲν ἀποτίλας,

ὡς δὲ εἶχε, οὕτω ἐσέθηκε βιβλίον, γράψας τὰ οἱ ἐδόκεε· ἀπορράψας δὲ τοῦ λαγοῦ τὴν γαστέρα, καὶ δίκτυα δούς ἅτε θηρευτῆ τῶν οἰκετέων τῷ πιστοτάτῳ, ἀπέστειλε ἐς 20 τοὺς Πέρσας, ἐντειλάμενός οἱ ἀπὸ γλώσσης, διδόντα τὸν λαγὸν Κύρῳ ἐπειπεῖν αὐτοχειρὶ μιν διελεῖν καὶ μηδένα οἱ ταῦτα ποιεῦντι παρῆναι.

124. Ταῦτά τε δὴ ὧν ἐπιτελέα ἐγένετο, καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παραλαβὼν τὸν λαγὸν ἀνέσχισε. εὐρῶν δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ τὸ βιβλίον ἐνεὸν λαβὼν ἐπελέγετο. τὰ δὲ γράμματα ἔλεγε τάδε· ὦ παῖ Καμβύσεω, σὲ γὰρ θεοὶ ἐπορέωσι· οὐ 5 γὰρ ἂν κοτε ἐς τοσοῦτον τύχης ἀπίκευ· σύ νυν Ἄστυάγεα τὸν σεωυτοῦ φονέα τίσαι. κατὰ μὲν γὰρ τὴν τούτου προθυμίην τέθνηκας, τὸ δὲ κατὰ θεοῦς τε καὶ ἐμὲ περὶεις. τὰ σε καὶ πάλαι δοκέω πάντα ἐκμεμαθηκέναι, σέο τε αὐτοῦ περὶ, ὡς ἐπρήχθη, καὶ οἷα ἐγὼ ὑπὸ Ἄστυάγεος 10 πέπονθα, ὅτι σε οὐκ ἀπέκτεινα, ἀλλὰ ἔδωκα τῷ βουκόλῳ. σύ νυν, ἣν βούλῃ ἐμοὶ πείθεσθαι, τῆσπερ Ἄστυάγης ἄρχει χώρας, ταύτης ἀπάσης ἄρξεις. Πέρσας γὰρ ἀναπείσας ἀπίστασθαι στρατηλάτее ἐπὶ Μήδους· καὶ ἣν τε ἐγὼ ὑπὸ Ἄστυάγεω ἀποδεχθῶ στρατηγὸς ἀντία 15 σεῦ, ἔστι τοι τὰ σὺ βούλει, ἣν τε τῶν τις δοκίμων ἄλλος Μήδων· πρῶτοι γὰρ οὗτοι ἀποστάντες ἀπ' ἐκείνου καὶ γενόμενοι πρὸς σέο Ἄστυάγεα καταιρέειν πειρήσονται. ὡς ὧν ἐτοίμου τοῦ γε ἐνθάδε ἐόντος, ποίεε ταῦτα, καὶ ποίεε κατὰ τάχος.

125. Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος ἐφρόντιζε ὅτεω τρόπῳ σοφωτάτῳ Πέρσας ἀναπείσει ἀπίστασθαι, φροντίζων δὲ εὕρισκέ τε ταῦτα καιριώτατα εἶναι· ἐποίηε δὴ ταῦτα. γράψας ἐς βιβλίον τὰ ἐβούλετο, ἀλίην τῶν 5 Περσέων ἐποιήσατο, μετὰ δὲ ἀναπτύξας τὸ βιβλίον καὶ ἐπιλεγόμενος ἔφη Ἄστυάγεά μιν στρατηγὸν Περσέων ἀποδεικνύναι. Νῦν, ἔφη τε λέγων, ὦ Πέρσαι, προαγορεύω ὑμῖν παρῆναι ἕκαστον ἔχοντα δρέπανον. Κῦρος μὲν ταῦτα προηγόρευσε. ἔστι δὲ Περσέων συχνὰ γένεα,

καὶ τὰ μὲν αὐτῶν ὁ Κῦρος συνάλισε καὶ ἀνέπεισε ἀπί- 10  
 στασθαι ἀπὸ Μήδων. ἔστι δὲ τάδε, ἐξ ὧν ὄλλοι πάν-  
 τες ἀρτέαται Πέρσαι, Πασαργάδαι, Μαράφιοι, Μά-  
 σπιοι· τούτων Πασαργάδαι εἰσὶ ἄριστοι, ἐν τοῖσι καὶ  
 Ἀχαιμενίδαι εἰσὶ φρήτρη, ἐνθεν οἱ βασιλέες οἱ Περ-  
 σεῖδαι γεγονάσι. ἄλλοι δὲ Πέρσαι εἰσὶ οἶδε, Πανθια- 15  
 λαῖοι, Δηρουσιαῖοι, Γερμάνιοι. οὗτοι μὲν πάντες ἀροτῆ-  
 ρές εἰσι, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι νομάδες, Δάοι, Μάρδοι, Δροπικοί,  
 Σαγάρτιοι.

126. Ὡς δὲ παρήσαν ἅπαντες ἔχοντες τὸ προειρη-  
 μένον, ἐνθαῦτα ὁ Κῦρος (ἦν γάρ τις χῶρος τῆς Περσικῆς  
 ἀκανθώδης ὅσον τε ἐπὶ ὀκτωκαίδεκα σταδίους ἢ εἴκοσι  
 πάντῃ) τοῦτόν σφι τὸν χῶρον προεῖπε ἐξημερῶσαι ἐν  
 ἡμέρῃ. ἐπιτελεσάντων δὲ τῶν Περσέων τὸν προκείμενον 5  
 ἄεθλον, δευτέρᾳ σφι προεῖπε ἐς τὴν ὑστεραίην παρεῖναι  
 λελουμένους. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τὰ τε αἰπόλια καὶ τὰς ποιμένας  
 καὶ τὰ βουκόλια ὁ Κῦρος πάντα τοῦ πατρὸς συναλίσας  
 ἐς τωὐτὸ ἔθνε καὶ παρεσκεύαζε ὡς δεξόμενος τῶν Περ-  
 σέων τὸν στρατόν, πρὸς δὲ οἴνω τε καὶ σιτίοισι ὡς ἐπι- 10  
 τηδεωτάτοισι. ἀπικομένους δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίῃ τοὺς Πέρσας  
 κατακλίνας ἐς λειμῶνα εὐώχεε. ἐπεὶ τε δὲ ἀπὸ δείπνου  
 ἦσαν, εἴρετό σφεας ὁ Κῦρος, κότερα τὰ τῇ προτεραίῃ  
 εἶχον ἢ τὰ παρεόντα σφι εἶη αἴρετώτερα. οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν  
 πολλὸν εἶναι αὐτῶν τὸ μέσον· τὴν μὲν γὰρ προτέρην 15  
 ἡμέρην πάντα σφι κακὰ ἔχειν, τὴν δὲ τότε παρεούσαν  
 πάντα ἀγαθὰ. παραλαβὼν δὲ τοῦτο τὸ ἔπος ὁ Κῦρος  
 παρεγύμνου τὸν πάντα λόγον, λέγων· "Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι,  
 οὕτω ὑμῖν ἔχει. βουλομένοισι μὲν ἐμέο πείθεσθαι ἔστι  
 τάδε τε καὶ ἄλλα μυρία ἀγαθὰ, οὐδένα πόνον δουλο- 20  
 πρεπέα ἔχουσι· μὴ βουλομένοισι δὲ ἐμέο πείθεσθαι εἰσι  
 ὑμῖν πόνοι τῷ χθιζῷ παραπλήσιοι ἀναρίθμητοι. νῦν  
 ὧν ἐμέο πειθόμενοι γίνεσθε ἐλεύθεροι. αὐτός τε γὰρ  
 δοκέω θείῃ τύχῃ γεγονὼς τάδε ἐς χεῖρας ἄγεσθαι, καὶ  
 ὑμέας ἡγήμαι ἄνδρας Μήδων εἶναι οὐ φαυλοτέρους οὔτε 25

τὰ ἄλλα οὔτε τὰ πολέμια. ὡς ὦν ἐχόντων ᾧδε, ἀπίστασθε ἀπ' Ἀστυάγεω τὴν ταχίστην.

127. Πέρσαι μὲν νυν προστάτεω ἐπιλαβόμενοι ἄσμενοι ἐλευθεροῦντο, καὶ πάλαι δεινὸν ποιούμενοι ὑπὸ Μήδων ἄρχεσθαι. Ἀστυάγης δὲ ὡς ἐπύθετο Κῦρον πρήσσοντα ταῦτα, πέμψας ἄγγελον ἐκάλεε αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ  
5 Κῦρος ἐκέλευε τὸν ἄγγελον ἀπαγγέλλειν, ὅτι πρότερον ἤξοι παρ' ἐκείνου ἢ αὐτὸς Ἀστυάγης βουλήσεται. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Ἀστυάγης Μήδους τε ὥπλισε πάντας, καὶ στρατηγὸν αὐτῶν ὥστε θεοβλαβῆς ἐὼν ἀπέδεξε Ἀρπαγον, λήθην ποιούμενος τὰ μιν ἐόργεε. ὡς δ' οἱ  
10 Μῆδοι στρατευσάμενοι τοῖσι Πέρσησι συνέμισγον, οἱ μὲν τινες αὐτῶν ἐμάχοντο, ὅσοι μὴ τοῦ λόγου μετέσχον, οἱ δὲ αὐτομόλεον πρὸς τοὺς Πέρσας, οἱ δὲ πλείστοι ἐθελοκάκεόν τε καὶ ἔφευγον.

128. Διαλυθέντος δὲ τοῦ Μηδικοῦ στρατεύματος αἰσχυρῶς, ὡς ἐπύθετο τάχιστα ὁ Ἀστυάγης, ἔφη ἀπειλέων τῷ Κύρῳ. Ἄλλ' οὐδ' ὡς ὁ Κῦρός γε χαιρήσει. Τοσαῦτα εἶπας πρῶτον μὲν τῶν μάγων τοὺς ὄνειροπό-  
5 λους, οἳ μιν ἀνέγνωσαν μετεῖναι τὸν Κῦρον, τούτους ἀνεσκολόπισε, μετὰ δὲ ὥπλισε τοὺς ὑπολειφθέντας τῶν Μήδων ἐν τῷ ἄστει, νέους τε καὶ πρεσβύτας ἄνδρας. ἔξαγαγὼν δὲ τούτους καὶ συμβαλὼν τοῖσι Πέρσησι ἐσσώθη, καὶ αὐτὸς τε Ἀστυάγης ἐξωγήθη, καὶ τοὺς  
10 ἐξήγαγε τῶν Μήδων ἀπέβαλε.

129. Ἐόντι δὲ αἰχμαλώτῳ τῷ Ἀστυάγει προστὰς ὁ Ἄρπαγος κατέχαιρέ τε καὶ κατεκερτόμεε, καὶ ἄλλα λέγων ἐς αὐτὸν θυμαλγέα ἔπεα, καὶ δὴ καὶ εἶρετό μιν πρὸς τὸ ἐωυτοῦ δεῖπνον, τό μιν ἐκείνος σαρξὶ τοῦ παιδὸς ἐθόιν-  
5 νισε, ὅ τι εἶη ἢ ἐκείνου δουλοσύνη ἀντὶ τῆς βασιληΐης. ὁ δὲ μιν προσιδὼν ἀντείρετο εἰ ἐωυτοῦ ποιέεται τὸ Κῦρου ἔργον. Ἄρπαγος δὲ ἔφη, αὐτὸς γὰρ γράψαι, τὸ πρῆγμα δὴ ἐωυτοῦ δικαίως εἶναι. Ἀστυάγης δὲ μιν ἀπέφαινε τῷ λόγῳ σκαιότατόν τε καὶ ἀδικώτατον εὔντα

πάντων ἀνθρώπων, σκαιότατον μὲν γε, εἰ παρεὼν αὐτῷ 10  
 βασιλέα γενέσθαι, εἰ δὴ δι' ἑωυτοῦ γε ἐπρήχθη τὰ πα-  
 ρέοντα, ἄλλω περιέθηκε τὸ κράτος, ἀδικώτατον δέ, ὅτι  
 τοῦ δείπνου εἵνεκεν Μηδους κατεδούλωσε· εἰ γὰρ δὴ  
 δεῖν πάντως περιθεῖναι ἄλλω τέω τὴν βασιληίην καὶ μὴ  
 αὐτὸν ἔχειν, δικαιοτέρον εἶναι Μήδων τέω περιβαλεῖν 15  
 τοῦτο τὸ ἀγαθὸν ἢ Περσέων· νῦν δὲ Μήδους μὲν ἀναι-  
 τίους τούτου ἔοντας δούλους ἀντὶ δεσποτέων γεγονέ-  
 ναι, Πέρσας δὲ δούλους ἔοντας τὸ πρὶν Μήδων νῦν  
 γεγονέναι δεσπότης.

130. Ἀστυάγης μὲν νυν βασιλεύσας ἐπ' ἕτεα πέντε  
 καὶ τριήκοντα οὔτω τῆς βασιληίης κατεπαύσθη, Μῆδοι  
 δὲ ὑπέκυψαν Πέρσησι διὰ τὴν τούτου πικρότητα, ἄρ-  
 ξαντες τῆς ἄνω Ἰλίου ποταμοῦ Ἀσίης ἐπ' ἕτεα τριή-  
 κοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν δυῶν δέοντα, παρέξ ἢ ὅσον οἱ Σκύθαι 5  
 ἦρχον. ὑστέρω μέντοι χρόνῳ μετεμέλησέ τέ σφι ταῦτα  
 ποιήσασιν καὶ ἀπέστησαν ἀπὸ Δαρείου· ἀποστάντες δὲ  
 ὀπίσω κατεστράφησαν μάχῃ νικηθέντες. τότε δὲ ἐπὶ  
 Ἀστυάγῳ οἱ Πέρσαι τε καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἐπαναστάντες  
 τοῖσι Μήδοισι ἦρχον τὸ ἀπὸ τούτου τῆς Ἀσίης. Ἀστυά- 10  
 γα δὲ Κῦρος κακὸν οὐδέν ἄλλο ποιήσας, εἶχε παρ'  
 ἑωυτῷ, ἐς ὃ ἐτελεύτησε. οὔτω δὲ Κῦρος γενόμενός τε  
 καὶ τραφεὶς ἐβασίλευσε, καὶ Κροῖσον ὑστερον τούτων  
 ἄρξαντα ἀδικίης κατεστρέψατο, ὡς εἴρηται μοι τὸ πρό-  
 τερον. τοῦτον δὲ καταστρεψάμενος οὔτω πάσης τῆς 15  
 Ἀσίης ἦρξε.

131. ΠΕΡΣΑΣ δὲ οἶδα νόμοισι τοιοῖσδε χρεωμέ-  
 νους· ἀγάλματα μὲν καὶ νηοὺς καὶ βωμοὺς οὐκ ἐν νόμῳ  
 ποιευμένους ἰδρύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖσι ποιεύσι μωρίην  
 ἐπιφέρουσι, ὡς μὲν ἐμοὶ δοκέειν, ὅτι οὐκ ἀνθρωποφυέας  
 ἐνόμισαν τοὺς θεοὺς κατάπερ οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶναι. οἱ δὲ 5  
 νομίζουσι Διὶ μὲν ἐπὶ τὰ ὑψηλότατα τῶν οὐρέων ἀνα-  
 βαίνοντες θυσίας ἔρδειν, τὸν κύκλον πάντα τοῦ οὐρα-  
 νοῦ Δία καλέοντες· θύουσι δὲ ἡλίῳ τε καὶ σελήνῃ καὶ



γῆ καὶ πυρὶ καὶ ὕδατι καὶ ἀνέμοισι. τούτοισι μὲν δὴ  
 10 μούνοισι θύουσι ἀρχῆθεν, ἐπιμεμαθήκασι δὲ καὶ τῇ  
 Οὐρανίῃ θύειν, παρά τε Ἀσσυρίων μαθόντες καὶ Ἀρα-  
 βίων. καλέουσι δὲ Ἀσσύριοι τὴν Ἀφροδίτην Μύλιττα,  
 Ἀράβιοι δὲ Ἀλιττα Πέρσαι δὲ Μίτραν.

132. Θυσίῃ δὲ τοῖσι Πέρσησι περὶ τοὺς εἰρημένους  
 θεοὺς ἦδε κατέστηκε. οὔτε βωμοὺς ποιεῦνται, οὔτε πῦρ  
 ἀνακαίουσι μέλλοντες θύειν· οὐ σπονδῇ χρέωνται, οὐκὶ  
~~αὐλῶ~~, οὐ στέμμασι, οὐκὶ οὐλήσι. τῶν δὲ ὡς ἐκάστῳ θύειν  
 5 θέλει, ἐς χῶρον καθαρὸν ἀγαγὼν τὸ κτήνος καλέει τὸν  
 θεόν, ἐστεφανωμένος τὸν τιάραν μυρσίνῃ μάλιστα. ἐω-  
 τῷ μὲν δὴ τῷ θύοντι ἰδίῃ μούνῳ οὐ οἱ ἐγγίνεται ἀρᾶ-  
 σθαι ἀγαθὰ· ὁ δὲ πᾶσι τοῖσι Πέρσησι κατεύχεται εὖ  
 γίνεσθαι καὶ τῷ βασιλείῃ· ἐν γὰρ δὴ τοῖσι ἅπασι Πέρ-  
 10 σησι καὶ αὐτὸς γίνεται. ἐπεὰν δὲ διαμιστύλας κατὰ  
 μέρεα τὸ ἱρήϊον ἐψήσῃ τὰ κρέα, ὑποπάσας ποίην ὡς  
 ἀπαλωτάτην, μάλιστα δὲ τὸ τρίφυλλον, ἐπὶ ταύτης ἔθηκε  
 ὦν πάντα τὰ κρέα. διαθέντος δὲ αὐτοῦ μάγος ἀνὴρ  
 παρεστῶς ἐπαεῖδει θεογονίην, οἴην δὴ ἐκείνοι λέγουσι  
 15 εἶναι τὴν ἐπαιοιδήν· ἄνευ γὰρ δὴ μάγου οὐ σφι νόμος  
 ἐστὶ θυσίας ποιέεσθαι. ἐπισχῶν δὲ ὀλίγον χρόνον, ἀπο-  
 φέρεται ὁ θύσας τὰ κρέα, καὶ χράται ὅ τι μιν ὁ λόγος  
 αἰρέει.

133. Ἡμέρην δὲ ἀπασέων μάλιστα ἐκείνην τιμᾶν  
 νομίζουσι τῇ ἕκαστος ἐγένετο. ἐν ταύτῃ δὲ πλέω δαῖτα  
 τῶν ἄλλων δικαιοῦσι προτίθεσθαι· ἐν τῇ οἱ εὐδαίμονες  
 αὐτῶν βοῦν καὶ ἵππον καὶ κάμηλον καὶ ὄνον προτιθέα-  
 5 ται ὄλους ὀπτοὺς ἐν καμίνοισι, οἱ δὲ πένητες αὐτῶν τὰ  
 λεπτὰ τῶν προβάτων προτιθέαται. σίτοισι δὲ ὀλίγοισι  
 χρέωνται, ἐπιφορήμασι δὲ πολλοῖσι καὶ οὐκ ἀλέσι· καὶ  
 διὰ τοῦτό φασι Πέρσαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας σιτεομένους πει-  
 νῶντας παύεσθαι, ὅτι σφι ἀπὸ δείπνου παραφορέεται  
 10 οὐδὲν λόγου ἄξιον· εἰ δέ τι παραφέροίτο, ἐσθίοντας ἂν  
 οὐ παύεσθαι. οἴνω δὲ κάρτα προσκέαται, καὶ σφι οὐκ

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

[Continue](#)

\*Fair usage policy applies

136. Ἀνδραγαθίη δ' αὕτη ἀποδέδεκται μετὰ τὸ μά-  
 χεσθαι εἶναι ἀγαθόν, ὅς ἂν πολλοὺς ἀποδέξῃ παῖδας.  
 τῷ δὲ τοὺς πλείστους ἀποδεικνύντι δῶρα ἐκπέμπει ὁ  
 βασιλεὺς ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος. τὸ πολλὸν δ' ἠγάταται ἰσχυρὸν  
 5 εἶναι. παιδεύουσι δὲ τοὺς παῖδας, ἀπὸ πενταέτεος ἀρ-  
 ξάμενοι μέχρι εἰκοσαέτεος, τρία μούνα, ἵππεύειν καὶ  
 τοξεύειν καὶ ἀληθίζεσθαι. πρὶν δὲ ἢ πενταέτης γένηται,  
 οὐκ ἀπικνέεται ἐς ὄψιν τῷ πατρί, ἀλλὰ παρὰ τῆσι γυ-  
 ναιξὶ διάιτᾶν ἔχει. τοῦδε δὲ εἵνεκα τοῦτο οὕτω ποιέεται,  
 10 ἵνα ἢν ἀποθάνῃ τρεφόμενος, μηδεμίαν ἄσπην τῷ πατρὶ  
 προσβάλῃ.

137. Αἰνέω μὲν νυν τόνδε τὸν νόμον, αἰνέω δὲ καὶ  
 τόνδε, τὸ μὴ μιῆς αἰτίας εἵνεκα μήτε αὐτὸν τὸν βασιλέα  
 μηδένα φονεύειν, μήτε τῶν ἄλλων Περσέων μηδένα τῶν  
 ἑωυτοῦ οἰκετέων ἐπὶ μιῇ αἰτίῃ ἀνήκεστον πάθος ἔρδειν·  
 5 ἀλλὰ λογισάμενος ἢν εὐρίσκη πλέω τε καὶ μέζω τὰ ἀδι-  
 κήματα ἔοντα τῶν ὑπουργημάτων, οὕτω τῷ θυμῷ χρᾶ-  
 ται. ἀποκτεῖναι δὲ οὐδένα κω λέγουσι τὸν ἑωυτοῦ πα-  
 τέρα οὐδὲ μητέρα, ἀλλὰ ὀκόσα ἤδη τοιαῦτα ἐγένετο,  
 πᾶσαν ἀνάγκην φασὶ ἀναζητούμενα ταῦτα ἀνευρεθῆναι  
 10 ἢτοι ὑποβολιμαῖα ἔοντα ἢ μοιχίδια· οὐ γὰρ δὴ φασὶ  
 οἶκος εἶναι τὸν γε ἀληθέως τοκέα ὑπὸ τοῦ ἑωυτοῦ παι-  
 δὸς ἀποθνήσκειν.

138. Ἄσσα δὲ σφὶ ποιέειν οὐκ ἔξεστι, ταῦτα οὐδὲ  
 λέγειν ἔξεστι. αἰσχιστον δὲ αὐτοῖσι τὸ ψεύδεσθαι νενό-  
 μισται, δεύτερα δὲ τὸ ὀφείλειν χρέος, πολλῶν μὲν καὶ  
 ἄλλων εἵνεκα, μάλιστα δὲ ἀναγκαίην φασὶ εἶναι τὸν  
 5 ὀφείλοντα καὶ τι ψεῦδος λέγειν. ὅς ἂν δὲ τῶν ἀστῶν  
 λέπρην ἢ λεύκην ἔχῃ, ἐς πόλιν οὗτος οὐ κατέρχεται, οὐδὲ  
 συμμίσγεται τοῖσι ἄλλοισι Πέρσησι. φασὶ δὲ μιν ἐς τὸν  
 ἥλιον ἀμαρτόντα τι ταῦτα ἔχειν. ξεῖνον δὲ πάντα τὸν  
 λαμβανόμενον ὑπὸ τούτων [πολλοὶ] ἐξελαύνουσι ἐκ τῆς  
 10 χώρας καὶ τὰς λευκὰς περιστερὰς, τὴν αὐτὴν αἰτίην  
 ἐπιφέροντες. ἐς ποταμὸν δὲ οὔτε ἐνουρέουσι οὔτε ἐμπτύ-

ουσι, οὐ χεῖρας ἐναπονίζονται, οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα περιο-  
ρέωσι, ἀλλὰ σέβονται ποταμούς μάλιστα.

139. Καὶ τότε ἄλλο σφι ὧδε συμπέπτωκε γίνεσθαι,  
τὸ Πέρσας μὲν αὐτοὺς λέληθε, ἡμέας μέντοι οὐ· τὰ οὐ-  
νόματά σφι ἔοντα ὁμοῖα τοῖσι σώμασι καὶ τῇ μεγαλο-  
πρεπείῃ τελευτῶσι πάντα ἐς τωὺτὸ γράμμα, τὸ Δωριέες  
μὲν σὰν καλέουσι, Ἴωνες δὲ σίγμα. ἐς τοῦτο διζήμενος 5  
εὐρήσεις τελευτῶντα τῶν Περσέων τὰ οὐνόματα, οὐ τὰ  
μὲν τὰ δ' οὐ, ἀλλὰ πάντα ὁμοίως.

140. Ταῦτα μὲν ἀτρεκέως ἔχω περὶ αὐτῶν εἰδὼς εἰ-  
πεῖν· τάδε μέντοι ὡς κρυπτόμενα λέγεται καὶ οὐ σαφη-  
νέως περὶ τοῦ ἀποθανόντος, ὡς οὐ πρότερον θάπτεται  
ἄνδρὸς Πέρσεω ὁ νέκυς, πρὶν ἂν ὑπ' ὄρνιθος ἢ κυνὸς  
ἐλκυσθῆναι. μάγους μὲν γὰρ ἀτρεκέως οἶδα ταῦτα ποιέ- 5  
οντας· ἐμφανέως γὰρ δὴ ποιεῦσι. κατὰ κηρώσαντες δὴ  
ῶν τὸν νέκυν Πέρσαι γῆ κρύπτουσι. μάγοι δὲ κεχωρί-  
δαται πολλὸν τῶν τε ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων καὶ τῶν ἐν Αἴ-  
γύπτῳ ἱρέων· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἀγνεύουσι ἐμψυχον μηδέ-  
κτείνειν, εἰ μὴ ὅσα θύουσι· οἱ δὲ δὴ μάγοι αὐτοχειρίῃ 10  
παντα πλὴν κυνὸς καὶ ἀνθρώπου κτείνουσι, καὶ ἀγώνι-  
σμα τοῦτο μέγα ποιεῦνται, κτείνοντες ὁμοίως μύρμηκας  
τε καὶ ὄφεις καὶ τὰλλα ἔρπετὰ καὶ πετεινά. καὶ ἀμφὶ  
μὲν τῷ νόμῳ τούτῳ ἐχέτω, ὡς καὶ ἀρχὴν ἐνομίσθη,  
ἄνειμι δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν πρότερον λόγον. 15

153. \* \* \* Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπιτρέψας τὰς μὲν  
Σάρδις Ταβάλω, ἀνδρὶ Πέρση, τὸν δὲ χρυσὸν τὸν τε  
Κροίσου καὶ τὸν τῶν ἄλλων Λυδῶν Πακτύη, ἀνδρὶ  
Λυδῷ, κομίζειν, ἀπήλαυσε αὐτὸς ἐς Ἀγβάτανα, Κροῖ-  
σὸν τε ἅμα ἀγόμενος καὶ τοὺς Ἴωνας ἐν οὐδενὶ λόγῳ 5  
ποιησάμενος τὴν πρώτην εἶναι. ἢ τε γὰρ Βαβυλῶν οἱ  
ἦν ἐμπόδιος καὶ τὸ Βάκτριον ἔθνος καὶ Σάκαι τε καὶ  
Αἰγύπτιοι, ἐπ' οὓς ἐπείχέ τε στρατηλατέειν αὐτός, ἐπὶ  
δὲ Ἴωνας ἄλλον πέμπειν στρατηγόν.

154. Ὡς δὲ ἀπήλασε ὁ Κῦρος ἐκ τῶν Σαρδίων, τοὺς

Λυδούς ἀπέστησε ὁ Πακτύης ἀπὸ τε Ταβάλου καὶ Κύρου, καταβὰς δὲ ἐπὶ θάλασσαν, ἅτε τὸν χρυσὸν ἔχων πάντα τὸν ἐκ τῶν Σαρδίων, ἐπικούρους τε ἐμισθοῦτο 5 καὶ τοὺς ἐπιθαλασσίους ἀνθρώπους ἔπειθε σὺν ἑωυτῷ στρατεύεσθαι. ἐλάσας δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς Σάρδις ἐπολιόρκεε Τάβαλον ἀπεργιμένον ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει.

155. Πυθόμενος δὲ κατ' ὁδὸν ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε πρὸς Κροῖσον τάδε· Κροῖσε, τί ἔσται τὸ τέλος τῶν γινομένων τούτων ἐμοί; οὐ παύσονται Λυδοί, ὡς οἴκασι, πρήγματα παρέχοντες καὶ αὐτοὶ ἔχοντες. φρουρίζω μὴ 5 ἄριστον ἢ ἐξανδράποδίσασθαι σφέας. ὁμοίως γάρ μοι νῦν γε φαίνομαι πεποιηκένας, ὡς εἴ τις πατέρα ἀποκτείνας τῶν παιδῶν αὐτοῦ φείσαιο. ὡς δὲ καὶ ἐγὼ Λυδῶν τὸν μὲν πλεον τι ἢ πατέρα ἔοντα σὲ λαβὼν ἄγω, αὐτοῖσι δὲ Λυδοῖσι τὴν πόλιν παρέδωκα, καὶ ἔπειτα θωυμάζω 10 εἴ μοι ἀπεστᾶσι; Ὁ μὲν δὴ τάπερ ἐνόεε ἔλεγε, ὁ δ' ἀμείβετο τοῖσδε, δείσας μὴ ἀναστάτους ποιήσῃ τὰς Σάρδις· ὦ βασιλεῦ, τὰ μὲν οἰκότα εἶρηκας, σὺ μέντοι μὴ πάντα θυμῷ χρέω, μηδὲ πόλιν ἀρχαίην ἐξαναστήσης, ἀναμάρτητον ἐοῦσαν καὶ τῶν πρότερον καὶ τῶν νῦν 15 ἔστεώτων. τὰ μὲν γὰρ πρότερον ἐγὼ τε ἔπρηξα, καὶ ἐγὼ ἐμῇ κεφαλῇ ἀναμάξας φέρω· τὰ δὲ νῦν παρεόντα Πακτύης γάρ ἐστι ὁ ἀδικέων, τῷ σὺ ἐπέτρεψας Σάρδις οὗτος δότω τοι δίκην. Λυδοῖσι δὲ συγγνώμην ἔχων τάδε αὐτοῖσι ἐπίταξον, ὡς μήτε ἀποστέωσι μήτε δεινοί τοι 20 ἔωσι. ἄπειπε μὲν σφι πέμψας ὅπλα ἀρήϊα μὴ ἐκτῆσθαι, κέλευε δὲ σφέας κιθῶνάς τε ὑποδύνειν τοῖσι εἴμασι καὶ κοθόρνους ὑποδέεσθαι, πρόειπε δ' αὐτοῖσι κιθαρίζειν τε καὶ ψάλλειν καὶ καπηλεύειν τοὺς παῖδας. καὶ ταχέως σφέας, ὦ βασιλεῦ, γυναῖκας ἀντ' ἀνδρῶν ὄψαι γεγυνοῦσας, ὥστε οὐδὲν δεινοί τοι ἔσονται μὴ ἀποστέωσι. 25

156. Κροῖσος μὲν δὴ ταῦτά οἱ ὑπετίθετο, αἰρετώτερα ταῦτα εὐρίσκων Λυδοῖσι ἢ ἀνδραποδισθέντας πρηθῆναι σφέας, ἐπιστάμενος ὅτι, ἦν μὴ ἀξιόχρεων πρόφασιν

πρότεινή, οὐκ ἀναπείσει μιν μεταβουλεύσασθαι, ἀρρώ-  
 δέων δὲ μὴ καὶ ὕστερόν κοτε οἱ Λυδοί, ἦν τὸ παρεὸν 5  
 ὑπεκδράμωσι, ἀποστάντες ἀπὸ τῶν Περσέων ἀπόλων-  
 ται. Κῦρος δὲ ἤσθεις τῇ ὑποθήκῃ καὶ ὑπὲς τῆς ὀργῆς,  
 ἔφη οἱ πείθεσθαι. καλέσας δὲ Μαζάρεια, ἄνδρα Μῆδον,  
 ταῦτά οἱ ἐνετείλατο προειπεῖν Λυδοῖσι τὰ ὃ Κροῖσος  
 ὑπέτίθετο, καὶ πρὸς ἐξανδραποδίσασθαι τοὺς ἄλλους 10  
 πάντας οἱ μετὰ Λυδῶν ἐπὶ Σάρδις ἐστρατεύσαντο, αὐ-  
 τὸν δὲ Πακτύην πάντως ζῶοντα ἀγαγεῖν παρ' ἐωυτόν.

157. Ὁ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ ἐντειλάμενος ἀπή-  
 λαυνε ἐς ἠθεᾶ τὰ Περσέων, Πακτύης δὲ πυθόμενος ἀγχουῦ  
 εἶναι στρατὸν ἐπ' ἐωυτόν ἰόντα, δείσας ὄχετο φεύγων ἐς  
 Κύμην. \* \* \*

161. Χῖοι μὲν νυν Πακτύην ἐξέδοσαν, Μαζάρης δὲ  
 μετὰ ταῦτα ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τοὺς συμπολιῶρκήσαντας  
 Τάβαλον, καὶ τοῦτο μὲν Πριηνέας ἐξηνδραποδίσατο,  
 τοῦτο δὲ Μαιάνδρου πεδῖον πᾶν ἐπέδραμε ληΐην ποιεύ-  
 μενος τῷ στρατῷ, Μαγνησίην δὲ ὡσαύτως. μετὰ δὲ 5  
 ταῦτα αὐτίκα νόυσῳ τελευτᾶ.

162. Ἀποθανόντος δὲ τούτου Ἀρπαγος κατέβη διά-  
 δοχος τῆς στρατηγίας, γένος καὶ αὐτὸς ἐὼν Μῆδος, τὸν  
 ὃ Μῆδων βασιλεὺς Ἀστυάγης ἀνόμῳ τραπέζῃ ἔδαισε,  
 ὃ τῷ Κύρῳ τὴν βασιληΐην συγκατεργασάμενος. οὗ-  
 τος ὦνῆρ τότε ὑπὸ Κύρου στρατηγὸς ἰποδεχθεὶς, ὡς 5  
 ἀπῖκετο ἐς τὴν Ἰωνίην, αἶρεε τὰς πόλιας χώμασι: ὅκως  
 γὰρ τειχήρεας ποιήσειε, τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν χώματα χῶν πρὸς  
 τὰ τείχεα ἐπόρθεε. πρώτη δὲ Φωκαίη Ἰωνίης ἐπεχείρησε.

163. Οἱ δὲ Φωκαῖέες οὗτοι ναυτιλίῃσι μακρῆσι πρῶ-  
 τοι Ἑλλήνων ἐχρήσαντο, καὶ τὸν τε Ἀδρίην καὶ τὴν  
 Τυρσηνίην καὶ τὴν Ἰβηρίην καὶ τὸν Ταρτησσὸν οὗτοί  
 εἰσι οἱ καταδέξαντες· ἐναυτίλλοντο δὲ οὐ στρογγύλησι  
 νηυσί, ἀλλὰ πεντηκοντέροισι. ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐς τὸν Ταρ- 5  
 τησσὸν προσφιλέες ἐγένοντο τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν Ταρτησ-  
 σίων, τῷ οὖνομα μὲν ἦν Ἀργανθώνιος, ἐτυράννευσε δὲ

Ταρτησοῦ ὀγδώκοντα ἔτεα, ἐβίωσε δὲ τὰ πάντα εἴκοσι  
καὶ ἑκατόν. τούτῳ δὴ τῷ ἀνδρὶ προσφιλέες οἱ Φωκαῖές  
10 οὕτω δὴ τι ἐγένοντο, ὡς τὰ μὲν πρῶτά σφεας ἐκλιπόντας  
Ἰωνίην ἐκέλευε τῆς ἐωυτοῦ χώρας οἰκῆσαι ὅκου βούλου-  
ται, μετὰ δέ, ὡς τοῦτό γε οὐκ ἔπειθε τοὺς Φωκαῖέας, ὁ  
δὲ πυθόμενος τὸν Μῆδον παρ' αὐτῶν ὡς αὐξοίτο, ἐδίδου  
σφι χρήματα τεῖχος περιβαλέσθαι τὴν πόλιν. ἐδίδου  
15 δὲ ἀφειδέως· καὶ γὰρ καὶ ἡ περίοδος τοῦ τεύχεος οὐκ  
ὀλίγοι στάδιοί εἰσι, τοῦτο δὲ πᾶν λίθων μεγάλων καὶ εὖ  
συναρμοσμένων.

164. Τὸ μὲν δὴ τεῖχος τοῖσι Φωκαεῦσι τρόπῳ τοιῷδε  
ἐξεποιήθη· ὁ δὲ Ἄρπαγος ὡς ἐπήλασε τὴν στρατιήν,  
ἐπολιόρκεε αὐτούς, προῖσχόμενος ἔπεα ὡς οἱ καταχρᾶ  
εἰ βούλονται Φωκαῖέες προμαχεῶνα ἓνα μῦνον τοῦ  
5 τεύχεος ἐρεῖψαι καὶ οἴκημα ἐν κατιρῶσαι. οἱ δὲ Φω-  
καῖέες, περιημεκτέοντες τῇ δουλοσύνῃ, ἔφασαν θέλειν  
βουλεύσασθαι ἡμέρην μίαν καὶ ἔπειτα ὑποκρινέεσθαι·  
ἐν ᾧ δὲ βουλεύονται αὐτοί, ἀπαγαγεῖν ἐκεῖνον ἐκέλευον  
τὴν στρατιήν ἀπὸ τοῦ τεύχεος. ὁ δ' Ἄρπαγος ἔφη εἰδέ-  
10 ναι μὲν εὖ τὰ ἐκεῖνοι μέλλοιεν ποιέειν, ὅμως δὲ σφι πα-  
ριέναι βουλεύσασθαι. ἐν ᾧ ὢν ὁ Ἄρπαγος ἀπὸ τοῦ τεύ-  
χεος ἀπήγαγε τὴν στρατιήν, οἱ Φωκαῖέες ἐν τούτῳ κα-  
τασπάσαντες τὰς πεντηκοντέρους, ἐσθέμενοι τέκνα καὶ  
γυναῖκας καὶ ἐπιπλά πάντα, πρὸς δὲ καὶ τὰ ἀγάλματα  
15 τὰ ἐκ τῶν ἱρῶν καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἀνάθήματα, χωρὶς ὅ τι  
χαλκὸς ἢ λίθος ἢ γραφὴ ἦν, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα πάντα ἐσθέντες  
καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐσβάντες ἔπλεον ἐπὶ Χίου. τὴν δὲ Φωκαίην  
ἐρημωθεῖσαν ἀνδρῶν ἔσχον οἱ Πέρσαι.

165. Οἱ δὲ Φωκαῖέες, ἐπεὶ τέ σφι Χῖοι τὰς νήσους  
Οἰνούσας καλεομένας οὐκ ἐβούλοντο ὠνεομένοισι πω-  
λέειν, δειμαίνοντες, μὴ αἱ μὲν ἐμπόριον γένωνται, ἢ δὲ  
αὐτῶν νῆσος ἀποκληῖσθῆ τούτου εἵνεκα, πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ  
5 Φωκαῖέες ἐστέλλοντο ἐς Κύρνον· ἐν γὰρ τῇ Κύρῳ εἴ-  
κοσι ἔτεσι πρότερον τούτων ἐκ θεοπροπίου ἀνεστήσαν-

το πόλιον, τῇ οὐνομα ἦν Ἀλαλίη. Ἀργανθώνιος δὲ τῆνικαῦτα ἤδη τετελευτήκεε. στελλόμενοι δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν Κύρνον, πρῶτα καταπλεύσαντες ἐς τὴν Φωκαίην κατεφόνευσαν τῶν Περσέων τὴν φυλακὴν, ἣ ἐφρούρεε παραδεξαμένη 10 παρὰ Ἀρπάγου τὴν πόλιον. μετὰ δέ, ὡς τοῦτό σφι ἐξέργαστο, ἐποίησαντο ἰσχυρὰς κατάρας τῷ ὑπολειπομένῳ ἔωυτῶν τοῦ στόλου. πρὸς δὲ ταύτησι καὶ μύδρον σιδήρεον κατεπόντωσαν, καὶ ὤμοσαν, μὴ πρὶν ἐς Φωκαίην ἤξειν πρὶν ἢ τὸν μύδρον τοῦτον ἀναφῆναι. στελλομέ- 15 νων δὲ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὴν Κύρνον, ὑπὲρ ἡμίσεως τῶν ἀστῶν ἔλαβε πόθος τε καὶ οἶκτος τῆς πόλιος καὶ τῶν ἠθέων τῆς χώρας, ψευδόρκιοι δὲ γενόμενοι ἀπέπλεον ὀπίσω ἐς τὴν Φωκαίην. οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν τὸ ὄρκιον ἐφύλασσαν, ἀερθέντες ἐκ τῶν Οἰνουσσέων ἔπλεον. 20

166. Ἐπεὶ τε δὲ ἐς τὴν Κύρνον ἀπίκοντο, οἶκεον κοινῇ μετὰ τῶν πρότερον ἀπικομένων ἐπ' ἕτερα πέντε, καὶ ἰρὰ ἐνιδρύσαντο. καὶ ἦγον γὰρ δὴ καὶ ἔφερον τοὺς περιοίκους ἅπαντας· στρατεύονται ὧν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς κοινῶ 5 λόγῳ χρησάμενοι Τυρσηνοὶ καὶ Καρχηδόνιοι, νηυσὶ ἐκάτεροι ἐξήκοντα. οἱ δὲ Φωκαίεες πληρώσαντες καὶ αὐτοὶ τὰ πλοῖα, ἔοντα ἀριθμὸν ἐξήκοντα, ἀντίαζον ἐς τὸ Σαρδόνιον καλεόμενον πέλαγος. ~~συμμισηγόντων~~ δὲ τῇ ναυμαχίῃ Καδμείῃ τις νίκη τοῖσι Φωκαιεῦσι ἐγένετο· αἱ μὲν γὰρ τεσσαράκοντά σφι νῆες διεφθάρησαν, αἱ δὲ εἴ- 10 κοσι αἱ περιεοῦσαι ἦσαν ἀχρηστοί· ἀπεστράφατο γὰρ τοὺς ἐμβόλους. καταπλώσαντες δὲ ἐς τὴν Ἀλαλίην ἀνέλαβον τὰ τέκνα καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας καὶ τὴν ἄλλην κτήσιν ὄσσην οἰαί τε ἐγίνοντο αἱ νέες σφι ἄγειν, καὶ ἔπειτα ἀπέντες τὴν Κύρνον ἔπλεον ἐς Ῥήγιον. 15

167. Τῶν δὲ διαφθαρεισέων νεῶν τοὺς ἀνδρας οἳ τε Καρχηδόνιοι καὶ οἱ Τυρσηνοὶ... ἔλαχόν τε αὐτῶν πολλῶ πλείους, καὶ τούτους ἐξαγαγόντες κατέλευσαν. μετὰ δὲ Ἀγυλλαίοισι πάντα τὰ παριόντα τὸν χῶρον ἐν τῷ οἱ Φωκαίεες καταλευσθέντες ἐκέατο, ἐγένετο διάστροφα καὶ 5



ἔμπηρα καὶ ἀπόπληκτα, ὁμοίως πρόβατα καὶ ὑποζύγια καὶ ἄνθρωποι. οἱ δὲ Ἄγυλλαῖοι ἐς Δελφοὺς ἔπεμπον, βουλόμενοι ἀκέσασθαι τὴν ἀμαρτάδα. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη σφέας ἐκέλευσε ποιεῖν τὰ καὶ νῦν οἱ Ἄγυλλαῖοι ἔτι ἐπιτε-  
 10 λέουσι· καὶ γὰρ ἐναγίζουσί σφι μεγάλως, καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν καὶ ἵππικὸν ἐπιστάσι. καὶ οὗτοι μὲν τῶν Φωκαϊέων τοιοῦτῳ μὲν ὁρῶν διεχρήσαντο, οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν ἐς τὸ Ῥήγιον καταφυγόντες ἐνθεῦτεν ὀρμεώμενοι, ἐκτήσαντο πόλιν γῆς τῆς Οἰνωτρίας ταύτην ἣτις νῦν Ἰέλη καλέε-  
 15 ται. ἐκτίσαν δὲ ταύτην πρὸς ἀνδρὸς Προσειδωνιήτεω μαθόντες, ὡς τὸν Κύρνον σφι ἡ Πυθίη ἐχρήσατο κτίσαι ἥρων ἔοντα, ἀλλ' οὐ τὴν νῆσον. Φωκαίης μὲν νυν περὶ τῆς ἐν Ἰωνίῃ οὕτω ἔσχε.

177. ΤΑ μὲν νυν κάτω τῆς Ἀσίας Ἄρπαγος ἀνάστατα ἐποίει, τὰ δὲ ἄνω αὐτῆς αὐτὸς Κῦρος, πᾶν ἔθνος καταστρεφόμενος καὶ οὐδὲν παρῖεις· τὰ μὲν νυν αὐτῶν πλέω παρήσομεν· τὰ δὲ οἱ παρέσχε πόνον τε πλείστον  
 5 καὶ ἀξιάπηγητότάτα ἐστὶ, τούτων ἐπιμνήσομαι.

178. Κῦρος ἐπεὶ τε τὰ πάντα τῆς ἡπείρου ὑποχείρια ἐποιήσατο, Ἀσσυρίοισι ἐπέτιθετο. τῆς δὲ Ἀσσυρίας ἐστὶ μὲν κου καὶ ἄλλα πολίσματα μεγάλα πολλά, τὸ δὲ ὀνομαστότατον καὶ ἰσχυρότατον, καὶ ἔνθα σφι  
 5 Νίνου ἀναστάτου γενομένης τὰ βασιλῆια κατεστήκεε, ἣν ΒΑΒΥΛΩΝ, εἰσα τοιαύτη δὴ τις πόλις. κέεται ἐν πεδίῳ μεγάλῳ, μέγαθος εἰσα μέτωπον ἑκάστου εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατὸν σταδίων, εἰσα τετραγώνου· οὗτοι στάδιοι τῆς περιόδου τῆς πόλιος γίνονται συνάπαντες ὀγδώκοντα  
 10 καὶ τετρακόσιοι. τὸ μὲν νυν μέγαθος τοσοῦτόν ἐστι τοῦ ἄστεος τοῦ Βαβυλωνίου, ἐκέκόσμητο δὲ ὡς οὐδὲν ἄλλο πόλισμα τῶν ἡμεῖς ἰδμεν. τάφρος μὲν πρῶτά μιν βαθέα τε καὶ εὐρέα καὶ πλὴν ὕδατος περιθέει· μετὰ δὲ τεῖχος πεντήκοντα μὲν πηχέων βασιληῶν ἐὼν τὸ εὖρος, ὕψος  
 15 δὲ διηκοσίων πηχέων· ὁ δὲ βασιληῖος πῆχυς τοῦ μετρίου ἐστὶ πῆχεος μέζων τρισὶ δακτύλοισι.

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

ἦσαν δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ χάλκεαι, φέρουσαι καὶ αὐταὶ ἐς αὐτὸν  
15 τὸν ποταμόν.

181. Τοῦτο μὲν δὴ τὸ τεῖχος θώρηξ ἐστί, ἕτερον  
δὲ ἔσωθεν τεῖχος [περιθει], οὐ πολλῶ τέω ἀσθενέστερον  
τοῦ ἑτέρου τείχεος, στεινότερον δέ. ἐν δὲ φάρσει ἑκατέρω  
τῆς πόλιος τετείχιστο ἐν μεσῶ ἐν τῷ μὲν τὰ βασιλήϊα  
5 περιβόλῳ μεγάλῳ τε καὶ ἰσχυρῶ, ἐν δὲ τῷ ἑτέρῳ Διὸς  
Βήλου ἴρον χαλκόπυλον, καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ τοῦτο ἔτι ἔόν, δύο  
σταδίων πάντη ἔόν τετράγωνον. ἐν μέσῳ δὲ τοῦ ἴρου  
πύργος στερεὸς οἰκοδόμηται, σταδίου καὶ τὸ μῆκος καὶ  
τὸ εὖρος, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ τῷ πύργῳ ἄλλος πύργος ἐπι-  
10 βέβηκε, καὶ ἕτερος μάλα ἐπὶ τούτῳ, μέχρι οὗ ὀκτῶ πυρ-  
γων. ἀνάβασις δὲ ἐς αὐτοὺς ἔξωθεν κύκλῳ περὶ πάντας  
τοὺς πύργους ἔχουσα πεποιήται. μεσοῦντι δέ κού τῆς  
ἀναβάσιός ἐστι καταγωγὴ τε καὶ θῶκοι ἀμπαυστήριοι,  
ἐν τοῖσι κατίζοντες ἀμπαύονται οἱ ἀναβαίνοντες. ἐν δὲ  
15 τῷ τελευταίῳ πύργῳ νηὸς ἔπεστι μέγας· ἐν δὲ τῷ νηῶ  
κλίνη μεγάλη κέεται εὖ ἐστρωμένη, καὶ οἱ τράπεζα πα-  
ρακίεται χρυσέη. ἄγαλμα δὲ οὐκ ἔνι οὐδὲν αὐτόθι ἐνι-  
δρυμένον, οὐδὲ νύκτα οὐδεὶς ἐναυλίζεται ἀνθρώπων, ὅτι  
μὴ γυνὴ μούνη τῶν ἐπιχωρίων, τὴν ἂν ὁ θεὸς ἔληται ἐκ  
20 πασέων, ὡς λέγουσι οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἔόντες ἱρέες τούτου τοῦ  
θεοῦ.

182. Φασὶ δὲ οἱ αὐτοὶ οὗτοι, ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ πιστὰ λέ-  
γοντες, τὸν θεὸν αὐτὸν φοιτᾶν τε ἐς τὸν νηὸν καὶ ἀμ-  
παύεσθαι ἐπὶ τῆς κλίνης, κατάπερ ἐν Θήβησι τῆσι  
Αἴγυπτίησι κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον, ὡς λέγουσι οἱ Αἰ-  
5 γύπτιοι· καὶ γὰρ δὴ ἐκεῖθι κοιμᾶται ἐν τῷ τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ  
Θηβαιέος γυνή, ἀμφότεραι δὲ αὐταὶ λέγονται ἀνδρῶν  
οὐδαμῶν ἐς ὀμιλίην φοιτᾶν· καὶ κατάπερ ἐν Πατάροισι  
τῆς Λυκίης ἡ πρόμαντις τοῦ θεοῦ, ἐπεὰν γένηται· οὐ  
γὰρ ὧν ἀει ἐστὶ χρηστήριον αὐτόθι· ἐπεὰν δὲ γένηται,  
10 τότε ὧν συγκατακληῖται τὰς νύκτας ἔσω ἐν τῷ νηῶ.

183. Ἔστι δὲ τοῦ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἱεροῦ καὶ ἄλλος κάτω νηός, ἔνθα ἄγαλμα μέγα τοῦ Διὸς ἐνὶ κατήμενον χρύσεον, καὶ οἱ τράπεζα μεγάλη παρακέεται χρυσή, καὶ τὸ βάθρον οἱ καὶ ὁ θρόνος χρυσεός ἐστι· καὶ ὡς ἔλεγον οἱ Χαλδαῖοι, ταλάντων ὀκτακοσίων χρυσοῦ πεποίηται 5 ταῦτα. ἔξω δὲ τοῦ νηοῦ βωμός ἐστι χρύσεος. ἐστι δὲ καὶ ἄλλος βωμός μέγας, ὅπου θύεται τὰ τέλεια τῶν προβάτων· ἐπὶ γὰρ τοῦ χρυσοῦ βωμοῦ οὐκ ἔξεστι θύειν ὅτι μὴ γαλαθηνὰ μούνα. ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ μέζονος βωμοῦ καὶ καταγίζουσι λιβανωτοῦ χίλια τάλαντα ἔτεος ἑκάστου οἱ 10 Χαλδαῖοι τότε ἐπεὰν τὴν ὄρτῃν ἄγωσι τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ. ἦν δὲ ἐν τῷ τεμένει τούτῳ ἔτι τὸν χρόνον ἐκεῖνον καὶ ἀνδριάς δώδεκα πήχεων, χρύσεος, στερεός· ἐγὼ μὲν μιν οὐκ εἶδον, τὰ δὲ λέγεται ὑπὸ Χαλδαίων, ταῦτα λέγω. τούτῳ τῷ ἀνδριάντι Δαρεῖος μὲν ὁ Ὑστάσπεος ἐπιβου- 15 λεύσας οὐκ ἐτόλμησε λαβεῖν, Ξέρξης δὲ ὁ Δαρείου ἔλαβε καὶ τὸν ἱεῖα ἀπέκτεινε ἀπαγορεύοντα μὴ κινεῖν τὸν ἀνδριάντα. τὸ μὲν δὴ ἱεὸν τοῦτο οὕτω κεκόσμηται, ἐστι δὲ καὶ ἴδια ἀναθήματα πολλά.

184. Τῆς δὲ Βαβυλῶνος ταύτης πολλοὶ μὲν κού καὶ ἄλλοι ἐγένοντο βασιλεῖς, τῶν ἐν τοῖσι Ἀσσυρίοισι λόγοισι μνήμην ποιήσομαι, οἱ τὰ τείχεά τε ἐπεκόσμησαν καὶ τὰ ἱεῖα, ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ γυναῖκες δύο· ἡ μὲν πρότερον ἄρξασα, τῆς ὕστερον γενεῆσι πέντε πρότερον γενομένη, 5 τῇ οὖνομα ἦν Σεμίραμις, αὕτη μὲν ἀπεδέξατο χώματα ἀπὸ τὸ πεδίου ἔοντα ἀξιοθέητα· πρότερον δὲ ἐώθεε ὁ ποταμὸς ἀπὸ τὸ πεδίου πᾶν πελαγίζειν.

185. Ἡ δὲ δὴ δεύτερον γενομένη ταύτης βασιλεία, τῇ οὖνομα ἦν Νίτωκρῖς, αὕτη δὲ συνετωτέρη γενομένη τῆς πρότερον ἀρξάσης· τοῦτο μὲν μνημόσυνα ἐλίπετο τὰ ἐγὼ ἀπηγήσομαι, τοῦτο δὲ τὴν Μήδων ὀρώσα ἀρχὴν μεγάλην τε καὶ οὐκ ἀτρεμίζουσαν, ἄλλα τε ἀραιοημένα 5 ἄσπεα αὐτοῖσι, ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ τὴν Νίνον, προεφυλάξατο ὅσα δύνατο μάλιστα, πρῶτα μὲν τὸν Εὐφρήτην ποτα-

μὸν ῥέοντα πρότερον ἰθύν, ὅς σφι διὰ τῆς πόλιος μέ-  
 σης ῥέει, τοῦτον ἄνωθεν διώρυχας ὀρύξασα οὕτω δὴ τι  
 10 ἐποίησε σκολιόν, ὥστε δὴ τρίς ἐς τῶν τινὰ κωμέων τῶν  
 ἐν τῇ Ἀσσυρίῃ ἀπικνέεται ῥέων. τῇ δὲ κώμῃ οὐνομά  
 ἐστὶ, ἐς τὴν ἀπικνέεται ὁ Εὐφρήτης, Ἀρδέρικκα. καὶ νῦν  
 οἱ ἂν κομίζονται ἀπὸ τῆσδε τῆς θαλάσσης ἐς Βαβυλῶ-  
 να, καταπλέοντες ἐς τὸν Εὐφρήτην ποταμὸν τρίς τε ἐς  
 15 τὴν αὐτὴν ταύτην κώμην παραγίνονται καὶ ἐν τρισὶ  
 ἡμέρησι. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ τοιοῦτο ἐποίησε, χῶμα δὲ παρ-  
 ἔχωσε παρ' ἐκάτερον τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ χεῖλος ἄξιον θώυ-  
 ματος, μέγαθος καὶ ὕψος ὅσον τι ἐστί. κατύπερθε δὲ  
 πολλῶ Βαβυλῶνος ὤρυσσε ἔλυτρον λίμνη, ὀλίγον τι πα-  
 20 ρατείνουσα ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, βάθος μὲν ἐς τὸ ὕδωρ  
 αἰὲ ὀρύσσουσα, εὖρος δὲ τὸ περίμετρον αὐτοῦ ποιεύσα  
 εἴκοσί τε καὶ τετρακοσίων σταδίων· τὸν δὲ ὀρυσσόμενον  
 χεῦν ἐκ τούτου τοῦ ὀρύγματος ἀναισίμου παρὰ τὰ χεί-  
 λεα τοῦ ποταμοῦ παραχέουσα. ἐπὶ τε δὲ οἱ ὤρυκτο,  
 25 λίθους ἀγαγομένη κρηπίδα κύκλῳ περὶ αὐτὴν ἤλασε.  
 ἐποίηε δὲ ἀμφοτέρα ταῦτα, τὸν τε ποταμὸν σκολιὸν καὶ  
 τὸ ὀρυγμα πᾶν ἔλος, ὡς ὅ τε ποταμὸς βραδύτερος εἶη  
 περὶ καμπὰς πολλὰς ἀγνύμενος, καὶ οἱ πλόοι ἐῶσι σκο-  
 λιοὶ ἐς τὴν Βαβυλῶνα, ἐκ τε τῶν πλόων ἐκδέκεται πε-  
 30 ρίοδος τῆς λίμνης μακρῆ. κατὰ τοῦτο δὲ εἰργάζετο τῆς  
 χώρας τῇ αἴ τε ἐσβολαὶ ἦσαν καὶ τὰ σύντομα τῆς ἐκ  
 Μήδων ὁδοῦ, ἵνα μὴ ἐπιμισγόμενοι οἱ Μῆδοι ἐκμανθά-  
 νῳιεν αὐτῆς τὰ πρήγματα.

186. Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἐκ βάθεος περιεβάλετο, τοι-  
 ῆνδε δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν παρενθήκην ἐποιήσατο. τῆς πόλιος  
 εἰούσης δύο φαρσέων, τοῦ δὲ ποταμοῦ μέσον ἔχοντος,  
 ἐπὶ τῶν πρότερον βασιλέων, ὅκως τις ἐθέλοι ἐκ τοῦ ἐτέ-  
 5 ρου φάρσεος ἐς τοῦτερον διαβῆναι, χρῆν πλοίῳ διαβαί-  
 νειν· καὶ ἦν, ὡς ἐγὼ δοκέω, ὀχληρὸν τοῦτο. αὕτη δὲ  
 καὶ τοῦτο προεΐδε· ἐπεὶ τε γὰρ ὤρυσσε τὸ ἔλυτρον τῇ  
 λίμνῃ, μνημόσυνον τόδε ἄλλο ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἔργου ἐλί-

πετο. Χετάμνετο λίθους περιμήκεας, ὡς δέ οἱ ἦσαν οἱ  
λίθοι ἐτοιμοὶ καὶ τὸ χωρίον ὀρώρυκτο, ἐκτρέψασα τοῦ 10  
ποταμοῦ τὸ ῥέεθρον πᾶν ἐς τὸ ὄρυσσε χωρίον, ἐν τῷ  
ἐπίμπλατο τοῦτο, ἐν τούτῳ ἀπεξηρασμένου τοῦ ἀρχαίου  
ῥεέθρου, τοῦτο μὲν τὰ χεῖλεα τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατὰ τὴν  
πόλιν καὶ τὰς καταβάσιαις τὰς ἐκ τῶν πυλίδων ἐς τὸν πο-  
ταμὸν φερούσας ἀνοικοδόμησε πλίνθοισι ὀπτῆσι κατὰ 15  
τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον τῷ τείχει, τοῦτο δὲ κατὰ μέσην κου  
μάλιστα τὴν πόλιν τοῖσι λίθοισι, τοὺς ὠρύξατο, οἰκοδό-  
μεε γέφυραν, δέουσα τοὺς λίθους σιδήρῳ τε καὶ μολύ-  
βδῳ. ἐπιτείνεσκε δὲ ἐπ' αὐτήν, ὅπως μὲν ἡμέρη γένοιτο,  
ξύλα τετράγωνα, ἐπ' ὧν τὴν διάβασιν ἐποιεῦντο οἱ Βα- 20  
βυλάμοι· τὰς δὲ νύκτας τὰ ξύλα ταῦτα ἀπαιρέεσκον  
τοῦδε εἵνεκα, ἵνα μὴ διαφοιτέοντες τὰς νύκτας κλέπτοιεν  
παρ' ἀλλήλων. ὡς δὲ τό τε ὀρυχθὲν λίμνη πλήρης ἐγε-  
γόνει ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τὰ περὶ τὴν γέφυραν ἐκε-  
κόσμητο, τὸν Εὐφρήτην ποταμὸν ἐς τὰ ἀρχαῖα ῥεέθρα 25  
ἐκ τῆς λίμνης ἐξήγαγε, καὶ οὕτω τὸ ὀρυχθὲν ἔλος γενό-  
μενον ἐς δέον ἐδόκεε γεγονέναι, καὶ τοῖσιν πολιήτησι γέ-  
φυρα ἦν κατεσκευασμένη.

187. Ἡ δ' αὐτὴ αὕτη βασιλεία καὶ ἀπάτην τοιήνδε  
τινὰ ἐμηχανήσατο. ὑπὲρ τῶν μάλιστα λεωφόρων πυλέων  
τοῦ ἄστεος τάφον ἐωυτῇ κατεσκευάσατο μετέωρον ἐπι-  
πολῆς αὐτέων τῶν πυλέων, ἐνεκόλαψε δὲ ἐς τὸν τάφον  
γράμματα λέγοντα τάδε· Τῶν τις ἐμεῦ ὕστερον γινομέ- 5  
νων Βαβυλῶνος βασιλέων ἦν σπανίση χρημάτων, ἀνοί-  
ξας τὸν τάφον λαβέτω ὅκοσα βούλεται χρήματα. μὴ  
μέντοι γε μὴ σπανίσας γε ἄλλως ἀνοίξῃ· οὐ γὰρ ἄμεινον.  
οὗτος ὁ τάφος ἦν ἀκίνητος μέχρι οὗ ἐς Δαρεῖον περι-  
ῆλθε ἡ βασιληΐη. Δαρείῳ δὲ καὶ δεινὸν ἐδόκεε εἶναι 10  
τῆσι πύλῃσι ταύτησι μηδὲν χρέεσθαι, καὶ χρημάτων  
κειμένων καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν χρημάτων ἐπικαλεομένων, μὴ  
οὐ λαβεῖν αὐτά. τῆσι δὲ πύλῃσι ταύτησι οὐδὲν ἐχρᾶτο  
τοῦδε εἵνεκα, ὅτι ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς οἱ ἐγένετο ὁ νεκρὸς

15 διεξελαύνοντι. ἀνοίξας δὲ τὸν τάφον εὗρε χρήματα μὲν οὐ, τὸν δὲ νεκρὸν καὶ γράμματα λέγοντα τάδε· Εἰ μὴ ἄπληστός τε ἕας χρημάτων καὶ αἰσχροκερδής, οὐκ ἂν νεκρῶν θήκας ἀνέωγες. αὕτη μὲν νυν ἡ βασιλεία τοιαύτη τις λέγεται γενέσθαι.

188. Ὁ δὲ δὴ Κῦρος ἐπὶ ταύτης τῆς γυναικὸς τὸν παῖδα ἐστρατεύετο, ἔχοντά τε τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ ἐωυτοῦ τοῦνομα Λαβυνήτου καὶ τὴν Ἀσσυρίων ἀρχήν. στρατεύεται δὲ δὴ βασιλεὺς ὁ μέγας καὶ σιτίοισι εὖ ἐσκευασμένος ἐξ οἴκου καὶ προβάτοισι, καὶ δὴ καὶ ὕδωρ ἀπὸ τοῦ Χοάσπεω ποταμοῦ ἅμα ἄγεται τοῦ παρὰ Σοῦσα ῥέοντος, τοῦ μούνου πίνει βασιλεὺς καὶ ἄλλου οὐδενὸς ποταμοῦ. τούτου δὲ τοῦ Χοάσπεω τοῦ ὕδατος ἀπεψημένου πολλὰ κάρτα ἅμαξαι τετράκυκλοι ἡμιόνειαι κομίζουσαι ἐν ἀγγείοισι ἀργυρέοισι ἔπονται, ὅπη ἂν ἐλαύνη ἐκάστοτε.

189. Ἐπεὶ τε δὲ ὁ Κῦρος πορευόμενος ἐπὶ τὴν Βαβυλῶνα ἐγένετο ἐπὶ Γύνδη ποταμῷ, τοῦ αἰ μὲν πηγαὶ ἐν Ματιηνοῖσι οὖρεσι, ῥέει δὲ διὰ Δαρδανέων, ἐκδιδοῖ δὲ ἐς ἕτερον ποταμὸν Τίγριν, ὁ δὲ παρὰ Ὠπιν πόλιν ῥέων ἐς τὴν Ἐρυθρὴν θάλασσαν ἐκδιδοῖ, τοῦτον δὴ τὸν Γύνδην ποταμὸν ὡς διαβαίνειν ἐπειράτο ὁ Κῦρος εὐντα νηυσιπέρητον, ἐνθαῦτά οἱ τῶν τις ἱρῶν ἵππων τῶν λευκῶν ὑπὸ ὕβριος ἐσβὰς ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν διαβαίνειν ἐπειράτο, ὁ δὲ μιν συμφήσας ὑποβρύχιον οἰχώκεε φέρων. κάρτα τε δὴ ἐχαλέπαινε τῷ ποταμῷ ὁ Κῦρος τοῦτο ὕβρισαντι, καὶ οἱ ἐπηπείλησε οὕτω δὴ μιν ἀσθενέα ποιήσκειν ὥστε τοῦ λοιποῦ καὶ γυναικίως μιν εὐπετέως, τὸ γόνυ οὐ βρεχούσας, διαβήσεσθαι. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἀπειλὴν μετεῖς τὴν ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα στρατεύσειν διαίρει τὴν στρατιὴν δίχα, διελὼν δὲ κατέτεινε σχοινοτενέας ὑποδέξας διώρυχας ὀγδώκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν παρ' ἑκάτερον τὸ χεῖλος τοῦ Γύνδεω τετραμμένας πάντα τρόπον, διατάξας δὲ τὸν στρατὸν ὀρύσσειν ἐκέλευε. οἶα δὲ ὀμίλου πολλοῖ

ἐργαζομένου ἦνετο μὲν τὸ ἔργον, ὅμως μέντοι τὴν θερείην πᾶσαν αὐτοῦ ταύτη διέτριψαν ἐργαζόμενοι. 20

190. Ὡς δὲ τὸν Γύνδην ποταμὸν ἐτίσατο Κῦρος ἐς τριηκοσίας καὶ ἐξήκοντά μιν διώρυχας διαλαβών, καὶ τὸ δεύτερον ἔαρ ὑπέλαμπε, οὕτω δὴ ἤλαυνε ἐπὶ τὴν Βαβυλῶνα. οἱ δὲ Βαβυλώνιοι ἐκστρατευσάμενοι ἔμενον αὐτόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένετο ἐλαύνων ἀγχοῦ τῆς πόλιος, συνέβα- 5 λόν τε οἱ Βαβυλώνιοι καὶ ἐσσωθέντες τῇ μάχῃ κατελήθησαν ἐς τὸ ἄστυ. οἷα δὲ ἐξεπιστάμενοι ἔτι πρότερον τὸν Κῦρον οὐκ ἀτρεμίζοντα, ἀλλ' ὀρέοντες αὐτὸν παντὶ ἔθνει ὁμοίως ἐπιχειρέοντα, προεσάξαντο σιτία ἐτέων κάρτα πολλῶν. ἐνθαῦτα οὗτοι μὲν λόγον εἶχον τῆς πο- 10 λιορκίης οὐδένα, Κῦρος δὲ ἀπορίησι ἐνείχετο ἅτε χρόνου τε ἐγγινομένου συχνοῦ, ἀνωτέρω δὲ οὐδὲν τῶν πρηγμάτων προκοπτομένων.

191. Εἴτε δὴ ὦν ἄλλος οἱ ἀπορέοντι ὑπεθήκατο, εἴτε καὶ αὐτὸς ἔμαθε τὸ ποιητέον οἱ ἦν, ἐποίησε δὴ τοιόνδε. τάξας τὴν στρατιὴν ἅπασαν ἐξ ἐμβολῆς τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τῇ ἐς τὴν πόλιν ἐσβάλλει, καὶ ὀπισθε αὐτὶς τῆς πόλιος τάξας ἐτέρους, τῇ ἐξίει ἐκ τῆς πόλιος ὁ ποταμός, 5 προεῖπε τῷ στρατῷ, ὅταν διαβατὸν τὸ ῥέεθρον ἴδωνται γενόμενον, ἐσιέναι ταύτη ἐς τὴν πόλιν. οὕτω τε δὴ τάξας καὶ κατὰ ταῦτα παραινέσας ἀπήλαυνε αὐτὸς σὺν τῷ ἀχρηῖω τοῦ στρατοῦ. ~~Χαπικόμενος~~ δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν λίμνην, τάπερ ἢ τῶν Βαβυλωνίων βασιλεία ἐποίησε κατὰ τε τὸν 10 ποταμὸν καὶ κατὰ τὴν λίμνην, ἐποίησε καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἕτερα τοιαῦτα· τὸν γὰρ ποταμὸν διώρυχι ἐσαγαγὼν ἐς τὴν λίμνην ἐοῦσαν ἔλος, τὸ ἀρχαῖον ῥέεθρον διαβατὸν εἶναι ἐποίησε, ὑπονοστήσαντος τοῦ ποταμοῦ. γενομένου δὲ τούτου τοιούτου, οἱ Πέρσαι οἷπερ ἐτετάχατο ἐπ' αὐτῷ 15 τούτῳ κατὰ τὸ ῥέεθρον τοῦ Εὐφρήτεω, ποταμοῦ ὑπονενοστηκότος ἀνδρὶ ὡς ἐς μέσον μηρὸν μάλιστά κη, κατὰ τοῦτο ἐσήϊσαν ἐς τὴν Βαβυλῶνα. εἰ μὲν νυν προεπύθοντο οἱ Βαβυλώνιοι ἢ ἔμαθον τὸ ἐκ τοῦ Κύρου ποιεύ-



20 μενον, οἱ δ' ἂν περιδόντες τοὺς Πέρσας ἐσελθεῖν ἐς  
 τὴν πόλιν διέφθειραν κάκιστα· κατακλήσαντες γὰρ ἂν  
 πάσας τὰς ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν πυλίδας ἐχούσας καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπὶ  
 τὰς αἵμασιὰς ἀναβάντες τὰς παρὰ τὰ χεῖλεα τοῦ ποτα-  
 μοῦ ἐληλαμένας, ἔλαβον ἂν σφεας ὡς ἐν κύρτη. νῦν δὲ ἐξ  
 25 ἀπροσδοκῆτου σφί παρέστησαν οἱ Πέρσαι. ὑπὸ δὲ μεγά-  
 θεος τῆς πόλιος, ὡς λέγεται ὑπὸ τῶν ταύτη οἰκημένων,  
 τῶν περὶ τὰ ἔσχατα τῆς πόλιος ἐαλωκότων τοὺς τὸ μέσον  
 οἰκέοντας τῶν Βαβυλωνίων οὐ μανθάνειν ἐαλωκότας,  
 ἀλλὰ τυχεῖν γάρ σφί ἐοῦσαν ὀρτήν, χορεύειν τε τοῦτον  
 30 τὸν χρόνον καὶ ἐν εὐπαθείησι εἶναι, ἐς ὃ δὴ καὶ τὸ κάρτα  
 ἐπύθοντο. καὶ Βαβυλῶν μὲν οὕτω τότε πρῶτον ἀραίρητο.

192. Τὴν δὲ δύναμιν τῶν Βαβυλωνίων πολλοῖσι μὲν  
 καὶ ἄλλοισι δηλώσω ὅση τις ἐστί, ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ τῷδε. βα-  
 σιλέϊ τῷ μεγάλῳ ἐς τροφήν αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῆς στρατιῆς  
 διαραίρηται, πάρεξ τοῦ φόρου, γῆ πᾶσα ὅσης ἄρχει.  
 5 δυώδεκα ὧν μηνῶν ἐόντων ἐς τὸν ἐνιαυτὸν τοὺς τέσσερας  
 μῆνας τρέφει μιν ἡ Βαβυλωνίη χώρα, τοὺς δὲ ὀκτῶ τῶν  
 μηνῶν ἡ λοιπὴ πᾶσα Ἄσῃ. οὕτω τριτημορίη ἡ Ἀσσυρίη  
 χώρα τῇ δυνάμει τῆς ἄλλης Ἀσίης. καὶ ἡ ἀρχὴ τῆς χώρας  
 ταύτης, τὴν οἱ Πέρσαι σατραπηΐην καλέουσι, ἐστί ἀπα-  
 10 σέων τῶν ἀρχέων πολλόν τι κρατίστη, ὅκου Τριτανταί-  
 χμη τῷ Ἀρταβάζου ἐκ βασιλέως ἔχοντι τὸν νομὸν τοῦ-  
 του ἀργυρίου μὲν προσῆει ἐκάστης ἡμέρης ἀρτάβη μεστή·  
 ἡ δὲ ἀρτάβη μέτρον ἐὼν Περσικόν, χωρέει μεδίμνου Ἀτ-  
 τικῆς πλεῖον χοίνιξι τρισὶ Ἀττικῆσι· ἵπποι δὲ οἱ αὐτοῦ  
 15 ἦσαν ἰδίη, πάρεξ τῶν πολεμιστηρίων, οἱ μὲν ἀναβαίνον-  
 τες τὰς θηλέας ὀκτακόσιοι, αἱ δὲ βαινόμεναι ἑξακισχί-  
 λιαὶ καὶ μύριαι· ἀνέβαινε γὰρ ἕκαστος τῶν ἐρσένων  
 τούτων εἴκοσι ἵππους. κυνῶν δὲ Ἰνδικῶν τοσοῦτο δὴ τι  
 πλῆθος ἐτρέφετο, ὥστε τέσσερες τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ κῶμαι  
 20 μεγάλαι, τῶν ἄλλων ἐοῦσαι ἀτελέες, τοῖσι κυσὶ προσ-  
 ετετάχατο σιτία παρέχειν. τοιαῦτα μὲν τῷ ἄρχοντι τῆς  
 Βαβυλῶνος ὑπῆρχε ἔοντα.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

πλοῖα αὐτοῖσι ἐστὶ τὰ κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν πορευόμενα ἐς  
 τὴν Βαβυλῶνα ἔοντα κυκλοτερέα πάντα σκύτινα. ἐπεὰν  
 5 γὰρ ἐν τοῖσι Ἀρμενίοισι τοῖσι κατύπερθε Ἀσσυρίων οὐ-  
 κημένοισι νομέας ἰτέης ταμόμενοι ποιήσωνται, περιτεί-  
 νουσι τούτοισι διφθέρας στεγαστρίδας ἔξωθεν ἐδάφους  
 τρόπον, οὔτε πρύμνην ἀποκρίνοντες οὔτε πώρην συνά-  
 γόντες, ἀλλ' ἀσπίδος τρόπον κυκλοτερέα ποιήσαντες καὶ  
 10 καλάμης πλήσαντες πᾶν τὸ πλοῖον τοῦτο, ἀπιάσι κατὰ  
 τὸν ποταμὸν φέρεσθαι, φορτίων πλήσαντες· μάλιστα δὲ  
 βίκους φοινικηίου κατάγουσι οἴνου πλέους. ἰθύνεται δὲ  
 ὑπὸ τε δύο πλήκτρων καὶ δύο ἀνδρῶν ὀρθῶν ἑστεώτων,  
 καὶ ὁ μὲν ἔσω ἔλκει τὸ πλήκτρον, ὁ δὲ ἔξω ὠθέει. ποιέε-  
 15 ται δὲ καὶ κάρτα μεγάλα ταῦτα τὰ πλοῖα καὶ ἐλάσσω·  
 τὰ δὲ μέγιστα αὐτῶν καὶ πεντακισχιλίων ταλάντων  
 γόμον ἔχει. ἐν ἐκάστῳ δὲ πλοίῳ ὄνος ζῶς ἔνεστι, ἐν δὲ  
 τοῖσι μέζοσι πλεῦνες. ἐπεὰν ὦν ἀπίκωνται πλέοντες ἐς  
 τὴν Βαβυλῶνα καὶ διαθέωνται τὸν φόρτον, νομέας μὲν  
 20 τοῦ πλοίου καὶ τὴν καλάμην πᾶσαν ἀπ' ὧν ἐκήρυξαν,  
 τὰς δὲ διφθέρας ἐπισάξαντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ὄνους ἀπελαύ-  
 νουσι ἐς τοὺς Ἀρμενίους. ἀνὰ τὸν ποταμὸν γὰρ δὴ οὐκ  
 οἶά τέ ἐστι πλέειν οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ ὑπὸ τάχεος τοῦ ποτα-  
 μοῦ· διὰ γὰρ ταῦτα καὶ οὐκ ἐκ ξύλων ποιεῦνται τὰ  
 25 πλοῖα, ἀλλ' ἐκ διφθερέων. ἐπεὰν δὲ τοὺς ὄνους ἐλαύ-  
 νοντες ἀπίκωνται ὀπίσω ἐς τοὺς Ἀρμενίους, ἄλλα τρόπῳ  
 τῷ αὐτῷ ποιεῦνται πλοῖα. τὰ μὲν δὴ πλοῖα αὐτοῖσι ἐστὶ  
 τοιαῦτα.

195. Ἐσθῆτι δὲ τοιῆδε χρέωνται, κιθῶνι ποδηνεκεί-  
 λινεῳ· καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦτον ἄλλον εἰρίνεον κιθῶνα ἐπενδύνει  
 καὶ χλανίδιον λευκὸν περιβαλλόμενος, ὑποδήματα ἔχων  
 ἐπιχώρια, παραπλήσια τῆσι Βοιωτίησι ἐμβάσι. κομῶν-  
 5 τες δὲ τὰς κεφαλὰς μίτρησι ἀναδέονται, μεμυρισμένοι  
 πᾶν τὸ σῶμα. σφρηγίδα δ' ἕκαστος ἔχει καὶ σκῆπτρον  
 χειροποίητον· ἐπ' ἐκάστῳ δὲ σκῆπτρῳ ἔπεστι πεποιη-  
 μένον ἢ μῆλον ἢ ῥόδον ἢ κρίνον ἢ αἰετὸς ἢ ἄλλο τι·

ἄνευ γὰρ ἐπισήμου οὐ σφί νόμος ἐστὶ ἔχειν σκῆπτρον.  
αὕτη μὲν δὴ σφί ἄρτισις περὶ τὸ σῶμά ἐστι. 10

196. Νόμοι δὲ αὐτοῖσι ὧδε κατεστέαται, ὁ μὲν σο-  
φώτατος ὅδε κατὰ γνώμην τὴν ἡμετέραν, τῷ καὶ Ἴλλυ-  
ριῶν Ἐνετοὺς πυνθάνομαι χρῆσθαι. κατὰ κώμας ἐκά-  
στας ἅπαξ τοῦ ἔτεος ἐκάστου ἐποιέετο τάδε. ὡς ἂν αἱ  
παρθένοι γυνοῖατο γάμων ὠραῖαι, ταύτας ὅκως συναγά- 5  
γοιεν πάσας, ἐς ἓν χωρίον ἐσάγεσκον ἀλέας, πέριξ δὲ  
αὐτὰς ἴστατο ὄμιλος ἀνδρῶν. ἀνιστὰς δὲ κατὰ μίαν  
ἐκάστην κήρυξ πωλέεσκε, πρῶτα μὲν τὴν εὐειδεστάτην  
ἐκ πασέων. μετὰ δέ, ὅκως αὕτη εὐροῦσα πολλὸν χρυσίου  
πρηθείη, ἄλλην ἀνεκήρυσσε, ἢ μετ' ἐκείνην ἔσκε εὐειδε- 10  
στάτη. ἐπωλέοντο δὲ ἐπὶ συνοικήσει. ὅσοι μὲν δὴ ἔσκον  
εὐδαίμονες τῶν Βαβυλωνίων ἐπίγαμοι, ὑπερβάλλοντες  
ἀλλήλους ἐξωνέοντο τὰς καλλιστευούσας. ὅσοι δὲ τοῦ  
δήμου ἔσκον ἐπίγαμοι, οὗτοι δὲ εἶδος μὲν οὐδὲν ἐδέοντο  
χρηστοῦ, οἱ δ' ἂν χρήματά τε καὶ αἰσχίονας παρθένους 15  
ἐλάμβανον. ὡς γὰρ δὴ διεξέλθοι ὁ κήρυξ πωλέων τὰς  
εὐειδεστάτας τῶν παρθένων, ἀνίστη ἂν τὴν ἀμορφεστά-  
την ἢ εἴ τις αὐτέων ἔμπηρος ἦν, καὶ ταύτην ἀνεκήρυσσε,  
ὅστις θέλοι ἐλάχιστον χρυσίου λαβὼν συνοικέειν αὐτῇ,  
ἐς ὃ τῷ τὸ ἐλάχιστον ὑπισταμένῳ προσέκεετο. τὸ δὲ ἂν 20  
χρυσίου ἐγίνετο ἀπὸ τῶν εὐειδέων παρθένων, καὶ οὕτω  
αἱ εὐμορφοὶ τὰς ἀμόρφους καὶ ἐμπήρους ἐξεδίδουσαν. ἐκ-  
δοῦναι δὲ τὴν ἑωυτοῦ θυγατέρα ὅτεω βούλοιτο ἕκαστος  
οὐκ ἐξῆν, οὐδὲ ἄνευ ἐγγυητέω ἀπαγαγέσθαι τὴν παρθέ-  
νον πριάμενον, ἀλλ' ἐγγυητὰς χρῆν καταστήσαντα, ἢ μὴν 25  
συνοικήσειν αὐτῇ, οὕτω ἀπάγεσθαι. εἰ δὲ μὴ συμφε-  
ροῖατο, ἀποφέρειν τὸ χρυσίου ἐκέετο νόμος. ἐξῆν δὲ καὶ  
ἐξ ἄλλης ἐλθόντα κώμης τὸν βουλόμενον ὠνέεσθαι. ὁ  
μὲν νυν κάλλιστος νόμος οὗτός σφί ἦν, οὐ μέντοι νῦν γε  
διετέλεσε ἑὼν, ἄλλο δὲ τι ἐξευρήκασιν νεωστὶ γενέσθαι, 30  
ἵνα μὴ ἀδικοῖεν αὐτὰς μήδ' ἐς ἑτέραν πόλιν ἄγωνται.  
ἐπεὶ τε γὰρ ἀλόντες ἐκακώθησαν καὶ οἰκοφθορήθησαν,

πᾶς τις τοῦ δήμου βίου σπανίζων καταπορνεύει τὰ θή-  
 λεα τέκνα.

197. Δεύτερος δὲ σοφίῃ ὄδε ἄλλος σφι νόμος κατε-  
 στήκεε. τοὺς κάμνοντας ἐς τὴν ἀγορὴν ἐκφορέουσι· οὐ  
 γὰρ δὴ χρέωνται ἰητροῖσι. προσιόντες ὦν πρὸς τὸν κά-  
 μνοντα συμβουλεύουσι περὶ τῆς νόσου, εἴ τις καὶ αὐ-  
 5 τὸς τοιοῦτο ἔπαθε, ὁκοῖον ἔχει ὁ κάμνον, ἢ ἄλλον εἶδε  
 παθόντα· ταῦτα προσιόντες συμβουλεύουσι καὶ παραι-  
 νέουσι, ἄσσα αὐτὸς ποιήσας ἐξέφυγε ὁμοίην νόσον ἢ  
 ἄλλον εἶδε ἐκφυγόντα, σιγῇ δὲ παρεξελθεῖν τὸν κάμνον-  
 τα οὐ σφι ἔξεστι, πρὶν ἂν ἐπείρηται ἥντινα νόσον  
 10 ἔχει.

198. Ταφαὶ δὲ σφι ἐν μέλιτι, θρῆνοι δὲ παραπλή-  
 σιοι τοῖσι ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ. ὁσάκις δ' ἂν μιχθῇ γυναικὶ τῇ  
 ἑωυτοῦ ἀνὴρ Βαβυλώνιος, περὶ θυμῖμα καταγιζόμενον  
 ἴζει, ἐτέρωθι δὲ ἢ γυνὴ τωῦτό τοῦτο ποιέει. ὄρθρου δὲ  
 5 γενομένου λούνται καὶ ἀμφότεροι· ἄγγεος γὰρ οὐδενὸς  
 ἄψονται πρὶν ἂν λούσωνται. ταῦτὰ δὲ ταῦτα καὶ Ἀρά-  
 βιοι ποιεῦσι.

199. Ὁ δὲ δὴ αἰσχιστος τῶν νόμων ἐστὶ τοῖσι Βα-  
 βυλωνίοισι ὄδε. δεῖ πᾶσαν γυναῖκα ἐπιχωρίην ἰζομένην  
 ἐς ἱρὸν Ἀφροδίτης ἄπαξ ἐν τῇ ζόῃ μιχθῆναι ἀνδρὶ ξείνῳ.  
 πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ οὐκ ἀξιεύμεναι ἀναμίσγασθαι τῆσι ἄλλησι  
 5 οἷα πλούτῳ ὑπερφρονέουσαι, ἐπὶ ζευγέων ἐν καμάρησι  
 ἐλάσασαι πρὸς τὸ ἱρὸν ἐστᾶσι, θεραπηΐη δὲ σφι ὄπισθεν  
 ἔπεται πολλή. αἱ δὲ πλεῦνες ποιεῦσι ὧδε· ἐν τεμένει  
 Ἀφροδίτης κατέαται στέφανον περὶ τῆσι κεφαλῆσι ἔχου-  
 σαι θώμιγγος πολλαὶ γυναῖκες· αἱ μὲν γὰρ προσέρχον-  
 10 ται, αἱ δὲ ἀπέρχονται· σχοινοτενέες δὲ διέξοδοι πάντα  
 τρόπον δι' ὧν ἔχουσι διὰ τῶν γυναικῶν, δι' ὧν οἱ ξεῖνοι  
 διεξιόντες ἐκλέγονται. ἔνθα ἐπεὰν ἴζηται γυνή, οὐ πρό-  
 τερον ἀπαλλάσσεται ἐς τὰ οἰκία, ἢ τίς οἱ ξείνων ἀργύ-  
 ριον ἐμβαλὼν ἐς τὰ γούνατα μιχθῇ ἔξω τοῦ ἱροῦ. ἐμβα-  
 15 λόντα δὲ δεῖ εἰπεῖν τοσόνδε· Ἐπικαλέω τοι τὴν θεὸν

Μύλιττα. Μύλιττα δὲ καλέουσι τὴν Ἀφροδίτην Ἀσσύριοι. τὸ δὲ ἀργύριον μέγαθός ἐστι ὅσονων· οὐ γὰρ μὴ ἀπόσσηται· οὐ γάρ οἱ θέμις ἐστί· γίνεται γὰρ ἶρον τοῦτο τὸ ἀργύριον. τῷ δὲ πρώτῳ ἐμβαλόντι ἔπεται, οὐδὲ ἀποδοκιμᾶ οὐδένα. ἔπεαν δὲ μιχθῆ, ἀποσιωσαμένη 20 τῇ θεῷ ἀπαλλάσσεται ἐς τὰ οἰκία, καὶ τῷπὸ τούτου οὐκ οὔτω μέγα τί οἱ δώσεις ὡς μιν λάμψαι. ὅσαι μὲν νυν εἶδεός τε ἐπαμμέναι εἰσὶ καὶ μεγάθεος, ταχὺ ἀπαλλάσσονται, ὅσαι δὲ ἄμορφοι αὐτέων εἰσὶ, χρόνον πολλὸν προσμένουσι, οὐ δυνάμεναι τὸν νόμον ἐκπλήσαι· 25 καὶ γὰρ τριέτεα καὶ τετραέτεα μετεξέτεραι χρόνον μένουσι. ἐνιαχῆ δὲ καὶ τῆς Κύπρου ἐστὶ παραπλήσιος τούτῳ νόμος.

200. Νόμοι μὲν δὴ τοῖσι Βαβυλωνίοισι οὔτοι κατεστέασι· εἰσὶ δὲ αὐτῶν πατριαὶ τρεῖς αἰ οὐδὲν ἄλλο σιτέονται εἰ μὴ ἰχθύς μῦνον, τοὺς ἐπεὶ τε ἂν θηρεύσαντες αὐήνωσι πρὸς ἥλιον, ποιεύσι τάδε· ἐσβάλλουσι ἐς ὄλμον, καὶ λεήναντες ὑπέροισι σῶσι διὰ σινδόνας· καὶ 5 ὅς μὲν ἂν βούληται αὐτῶν, ἅτε μάζαν μαζάμενος ἔχει, ὁ δὲ ἄρτου τρόπον ὀπτήσας.

201. Ὡς δὲ τῷ Κῦρῳ καὶ τοῦτο τὸ ἔθνος κατέργαστο, ἐπεθύμησε Μασσαγέτας ὑπ' ἐωυτῷ ποιήσασθαι. τὸ δὲ ἔθνος τοῦτο καὶ μέγα λέγεται εἶναι καὶ ἄλκιμον, οἰκημένον δὲ πρὸς ἡῶ τε καὶ ἡλίου ἀνατολάς, πέρην τοῦ Ἀράξεω ποταμοῦ, ἀντίον δὲ Ἰσσηδόνων ἀνδρῶν. εἰσὶ δὲ 5 οἴτινες καὶ Σκυθικὸν λέγουσι τοῦτο τὸ ἔθνος εἶναι.

202. Ὁ δὲ Ἀράξης λέγεται καὶ μέζων καὶ ἐλάσσων εἶναι τοῦ Ἰστρου. νήσους δ' ἐν αὐτῷ Αεσβῶ μεγάθεα παραπλησίας συχνὰς φασὶ εἶναι, ἐν δὲ αὐτῆσι ἀνθρώπους οἱ σιτέονται μὲν ρίζας τὸ θέρος ὀρύσσοντες παντοίας, καρπούς δὲ ἀπὸ δενδρέων ἐξευρημένους σφι ἐς 5 φορβὴν κατατίθεσθαι ὠραίους, καὶ τούτους σιτέεσθαι τὴν χειμερινήν, ἄλλα δὲ σφι ἐξευρῆσθαι δένδρεα καρπούς τοιούσδε τινὰς φέροντα, τοὺς ἐπεὶ τε ἂν ἐς τούτῳ

συνέλθωσι κατὰ ἴλας καὶ πῦρ ἀνακαύσωνται, κύκλω πε  
 10 ριζομένους ἐπιβάλλειν ἐπὶ τὸ πῦρ, ὄσφραινομένους δὲ  
 καταγιζομένου τοῦ καρποῦ τοῦ ἐπιβαλλομένου μεθύσκε-  
 σθαι τῇ ὀδμῇ, κατάπερ Ἑλληνας τῷ οἴνω, πλεῦνος δὲ  
 ἐπιβαλλομένου τοῦ καρποῦ μᾶλλον μεθύσκεσθαι, ἐς ὃ  
 ἐς ὄρχησίν τε ἀνίστασθαι καὶ ἐς ἀοιδὴν ἀπικνέεσθαι.  
 15 τούτων μὲν αὕτη λέγεται δίαιτα εἶναι· ὁ δὲ Ἀράξης πο-  
 ταμὸς ῥέει μὲν ἐκ Ματιηνῶν, ὅθενπερ ὁ Γύνδης, τὸν ἐς  
 τὰς διώρυχας τὰς ἐξήκοντά τε καὶ τριηκοσίας διέλαβε ὁ  
 Κῦρος, στόμασι δὲ ἐξερεύγεται τεσσαράκοντα, τῶν τὰ  
 πάντα πλὴν ἑνὸς ἐς ἔλεά τε καὶ τενάγεια ἐκδιδοῖ, ἐν τοῖσι  
 20 ἀνθρώπους κατοικεῖσθαι λέγουσι ἰχθῦς ὠμοὺς σιτεομέ-  
 νους, ἐσθῆτι δὲ νομίζοντας χρᾶσθαι φωκέων δέρμασι.  
 τὸ δὲ ἐν τῶν στομάτων τοῦ Ἀράξεω ῥέει διὰ καθαροῦ ἐς  
 τὴν Κασπίην θάλασσαν. ἡ δὲ Κασπίη θάλασσά ἐστι  
 ἐπ' ἑωυτῆς, οὐ συμμίσγουσα τῇ ἐτέρῃ θαλάσση. τὴν μὲν  
 25 γὰρ Ἑλληνες ναυτίλλονται πᾶσαν, καὶ ἡ ἔξω στηλέων  
 θάλασσα ἡ Ἀτλαντὶς καλεομένη καὶ ἡ Ἐρυθρὴ μία  
 τυγχάνει ἐοῦσα.

203. Ἡ δὲ Κασπίη ἐστὶ ἐτέρη ἐπ' ἑωυτῆς, ἐοῦσα μῆ-  
 κος μὲν πλόου εἰρεσίῃ χρεωμένῳ πεντεκαίδεκα ἡμερέων,  
 εὖρος δέ, τῇ εὐρυτάτῃ ἐστὶ αὐτῇ ἑωυτῆς, ὀκτὼ ἡμερέων.  
 καὶ τὰ μὲν πρὸς τὴν ἐσπέρην φέροντα τῆς θαλάσσης  
 5 ταύτης ὁ Καύκασος παρατείνει, ἐὼν οὐρέων καὶ πλήθει  
 μέγιστον καὶ μεγάλῃ ὑψηλότατον. ἔθνεα δὲ ἀνθρώπων  
 πολλὰ καὶ παντοῖα ἐν ἑωυτῷ ἔχει ὁ Καύκασος, τὰ πολ-  
 λὰ πάντα ἀπ' ὕλης ἀγρίας ζῶοντα· ἐν τοῖσι καὶ δένδρεα  
 φύλλα τοιῆσδε ιδέης παρεχόμενα εἶναι λέγεται, τὰ τρί-  
 10 βοντάς τε καὶ παραμίσγοντας ὕδωρ ζῶα ἐωυτοῖσι ἐς τὴν  
 ἐσθῆτα ἐγγράφειν· τὰ δὲ ζῶα οὐκ ἐκπλύνεσθαι, ἀλλὰ  
 συγκαταγηράσκειν τῷ ἄλλῳ εἰρίῳ, κατάπερ ἐνυφανθέν-  
 τα ἀρχήν. μίξιν τε τούτων τῶν ἀνθρώπων εἶναι ἐμφανέα  
 κατάπερ τοῖσι προβάτοισι.

204. Τὰ μὲν δὴ πρὸς ἐσπέρην τῆς θαλάσσης ταύτης

τῆς **Κασπίης** καλεομένης ὁ **Καύκασος** ἀπέργει, τὰ δὲ πρὸς ἡῶ τε καὶ ἥλιον ἀνατέλλοντα πεδίου ἐκδέκεται πλήθος ἄπειρον ἐς ἄποψιν. τοῦ ὦν δὴ πεδίου τοῦ μεγάλου οὐκ ἐλαχίστην μοίρην μετέχουσι οἱ **Μασσαγέται**, ἐπ' οὓς 5 ὁ **Κῦρος** ἔσχε προθυμίην στρατεύσασθαι. πολλά τε γάρ μιν καὶ μεγάλα τὰ ἐπαείροντα καὶ ἐποτρύνοντα ἦν, πρῶτον μὲν ἡ γένεσις, τὸ δοκέειν πλέον τι εἶναι ἀνθρώπου, δεύτερα δὲ ἡ εὐτυχίη ἢ κατὰ τοὺς πολέμους γενομένη· ὅκη γὰρ ἰθύσειε στρατεύεσθαι **Κῦρος**, ἀμήχανον 10 ἦν ἐκεῖνο τὸ ἔθνος διαφυγέειν.

205. Ἦν δὲ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἀποθανόντος γυνὴ τῶν **Μασσαγετέων** βασιλεια· **Τόμυρίς** οἱ ἦν οὖνομα. ταύτην πέμπων ὁ **Κῦρος** ἐμνᾶτο τῷ λόγῳ, θέλων γυναῖκα ἣν ἔχειν. ἡ δὲ **Τόμυρις** συνιείσα οὐκ αὐτήν μιν μνώμενον ἀλλὰ τὴν **Μασσαγετέων** βασιληίην, ἀπείπατο τὴν πρό- 5 σοδον. **Κῦρος** δὲ μετὰ τοῦτο, ὥς οἱ δόλω οὐ προεχώρεε, ἐλάσας ἐπὶ τὸν Ἄράξεια ἐποιέετο ἐκ τοῦ ἐμφανέος ἐπὶ τοὺς **Μασσαγέτας** στρατηίην, γεφύρας τε ζευγνύων ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ διάβασιν τῷ στρατῷ, καὶ πύργους ἐπὶ πλοίων τῶν διαπορθμεύοντων τὸν ποταμὸν οἰκοδομέ- 10 μενος.

206. Ἔχοντι δὲ οἱ τοῦτον τὸν πόνον πέμψασα ἡ **Τόμυρις** κήρυκα ἔλεγε τάδε· ὦ βασιλεῦ **Μήδων**, παῦσαι σπεύδων τὰ σπεύδεις· οὐ γὰρ ἂν εἰδείης εἴ τοι ἐς καιρὸν ἔσται ταῦτα τελεύμενα· παυσάμενος δὲ βασιλευε τῶν σεωντοῦ, καὶ ἡμέας ἀνέχου ὀρέων ἄρχοντας 5 τῶνπερ ἄρχομεν. οὐκὼν ἐθελήσεις ὑποθήκησι τησίδε χρέεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πάντα μᾶλλον ἢ δι' ἡσυχίης εἶναι. σὺ δὲ εἰ μέγαν προθυμέαι **Μασσαγετέων** πειρηθῆναι, φέρε, μόχθον μὲν τὸν ἔχεις ζευγνύς τὸν ποταμόν, ἄφες, σὺ δέ, ἡμέων ἀναχωρησάντων ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τριῶν 10 ἡμερέων ὁδόν, διάβαινε ἐς τὴν ἡμετέρην. εἰ δ' ἡμέας βούλει ἐσδέξασθαι μᾶλλον ἐς τὴν ὑμετέρην, σὺ ταῦτο ποίει. Ταῦτα δὲ ἀκούσας ὁ **Κῦρος** συνεκάλεσε **Περ-**



σέων τοὺς πρώτους, συναγείρας δὲ τούτους ἐς μέσον  
 15 σφί προετίθεε τὸ πρῆγμα, συμβουλευόμενος ὀκότερα  
 ποιέη. τῶν δὲ κατὰ τούτῳ αἰ γνῶμαι συνεξέπιπτον,  
 κελευόντων ἐσδέκεσθαι Τόμυρῖν τε καὶ τὸν στρατὸν αὐ-  
 τῆς ἐς τὴν χώραν.

207. Παρεὼν δὲ καὶ μεμφόμενος τὴν γνώμην ταύ-  
 την Κροῖσος ὁ Λυδὸς ἀπεδείκνυτο ἐναντίην τῇ προκει-  
 μένῃ γνώμῃ λέγων τάδε· ὦ βασιλεῦ, εἶπον μὲν καὶ  
 πρότερόν τοι, ὅτι ἐπεὶ με Ζεὺς ἔδωκέ τοι, τὸ ἂν ὄρω  
 5 σφάλμα ἐὼν οἴκῳ τῷ σῷ, κατὰ δύναμιν ἀποτρέψειν. τὰ  
 δέ μοι παθήματα, ἔοντα ἀχάρिता, μαθήματα γέγονεε. εἰ  
 μὲν ἀθάνατος δοκέεις εἶναι καὶ στρατιῆς τοιαύτης ἄρχειν,  
 οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη πρῆγμα γνώμας ἐμέ σοι ἀποφαίνεσθαι· εἰ  
 δὲ ἔγνωκας, ὅτι ἄνθρωπος καὶ σὺ εἷς καὶ ἑτέρων τοιῶνδε  
 10 ἄρχεις, ἐκείνο πρῶτον μάθε, ὡς κύκλος τῶν ἀνθρωπηῶν  
 ἐστὶ πρηγμάτων, περιφερόμενος δὲ οὐκ ἔῃ αἰεὶ τοὺς αὐ-  
 τοὺς εὐτυχέειν. ἤδη ὦν ἐγὼ γνώμην ἔχω περὶ τοῦ προ-  
 κειμένου πρήγματος τὰ ἔμπαλιν ἢ οὗτοι. εἰ γὰρ ἐθελή-  
 σομεν ἐσδέξασθαι τοὺς πολεμίους ἐς τὴν χώραν, ὅδε τοι  
 15 ἐν αὐτῷ κίνδυνος ἐνι. ἐσσωθεῖς μὲν προσαπολλύεις πᾶ-  
 σαν τὴν ἀρχήν· δῆλα γὰρ δή, ὅτι νικῶντες Μασσαγέται  
 οὐ τὸ ὀπίσω φεύξονται, ἀλλ' ἐπ' ἀρχὰς τὰς σὰς ἐλῶσι·  
 νικῶν δὲ οὐ νικᾶς τοσοῦτον ὅσον εἰ διαβὰς ἐς τὴν ἐκεί-  
 νων, νικῶν Μασσαγέτας, ἔποιο φεύγουσι· τούτῳ γὰρ  
 20 ἀντιθήσω ἐκείνῳ, ὅτι νικήσας τοὺς ἐναντιουμένους ἐλᾶς  
 ἰθὺ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῆς Τομύριος. χωρὶς τε τοῦ ἀπηγημέ-  
 νου αἰσχροῦ καὶ οὐκ ἀνασχετόν, Κῦρόν γε τὸν Καμ-  
 βύσειω γυναικὶ εἴξαντα ὑποχωρήσαι τῆς χώρας. νῦν  
 ὦν μοι δοκέει διαβάντας προελθεῖν ὅσον ἂν ἐκείνοι διε-  
 25 ξίωσι, ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ τάδε ποιέοντας πειρᾶσθαι ἐκείνων  
 περιγενέσθαι. ὡς γὰρ ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι, Μασσαγέται  
 εἰσὶ ἀγαθῶν τε Περσικῶν ἄπειροι καὶ καλῶν μεγάλων  
 ἀπαθές· τούτοισι ὦν τοῖσι ἀνδράσι τῶν προβάτων  
 ἀφειδέως πολλὰ κατακόψαντας καὶ σκευάσαντας προ-

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

ὤμων πτέρυγας, καὶ τουτέων τῇ μὲν τὴν Ἀσίην, τῇ δὲ τὴν Εὐρώπην ἐπισκιάζειν. οὐκων ἐστὶ μηχανὴ ἀπὸ τῆς  
 20 ὄψιος ταύτης οὐδεμία τὸ μὴ κεῖνον ἐπιβουλεύειν ἐμοί.  
 σὺ τοίνυν τὴν ταχίστην πορεύεο ὀπίσω ἐς Πέρσας, καὶ ποίεε ὅκως, ἐπεὰν ἐγὼ τάδε καταστρεψάμενος ἔλθω ἐκεῖ, ὡς μοι καταστήσης τὸν παῖδα ἐς ἔλεγχον.

210. Κῦρος μὲν δοκέων Δαρείϊον οἱ ἐπιβουλεύειν ἔλεγε τάδε· τῷ δὲ ὁ δαίμων προέφαινε ὡς αὐτὸς μὲν τελευτήσειν αὐτοῦ ταύτη μέλλοι, ἡ δὲ βασιληΐη αὐτοῦ περιχωρέοι ἐς Δαρείϊον. ἀμείβεταί οἱ δὴ ὦν ὁ Ὑστά-  
 5 σπης τοῖσδε· ὦ βασιλεῦ, μὴ εἴη ἀνὴρ Πέρσης γεγρονῶς ὅστις τοι ἐπιβουλεύσει, εἰ δ' ἐστὶ, ἀπόλοιτο ὡς τάχιστα· ὅς ἀντὶ μὲν δούλων ἐποίησας ἐλευθέρους Πέρσας εἶναι, ἀντὶ δὲ ἄρχεσθαι ὑπ' ἄλλων ἄρχειν ἀπάντων. εἰ δὲ τίς τοι ὄψις ἀπαγγέλλει παῖδα τὸν ἐμὸν νεώτερα βουλεύειν  
 10 περὶ σέο, ἐγὼ τοι παραδίδωμι χρῆσθαι αὐτῷ τοῦτο ὅ τι σὺ βούλει. Ὑστάσπης μὲν τούτοισι ἀμειψάμενος καὶ διαβὰς τὸν Ἀράξεα ἦϊε ἐς Πέρσας, φυλάξων Κύρω τὸν παῖδα Δαρείϊον.

211. Κῦρος δὲ προελθὼν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀράξεω ἡμέρης ὁδὸν ἐποίεε τὰς Κροίσου ὑποθήκας. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα, Κύρου τε καὶ Περσέων τοῦ καθαροῦ στρατοῦ ἀπελάσαντος ὀπίσω ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀράξεα, λειφθέντος δὲ τοῦ ἀχρη-  
 5 ῖου, ἐπελθοῦσα τῶν Μασσαγετέων τριτημορις τοῦ στρατοῦ τούς τε λειφθέντας τῆς Κύρου στρατιῆς ἐφόνευε ἀλεξομένους καὶ τὴν προκειμένην ἰδόντες δαῖτα, ὡς ἐχειρώσαντο τοὺς ἐναντίους, κλιθέντες δαίνυντο, πληρωθέντες δὲ φορβῆς καὶ οἴνου εὔδον. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι ἐπελθόντες  
 10 πολλοὺς μὲν σφεων ἐφόνευσαν, πολλῶ δ' ἔτι πλεῦνας ἐζώγησαν, καὶ ἄλλους καὶ τὸν τῆς βασιλείης Τομύριος παῖδα, στρατηγέοντα Μασσαγετέων, τῷ οὐνομα ἦν Σπαργαπίσης.

212. Ἡ δὲ πυθομένη τά τε περὶ τὴν στρατιὴν γεγρονῶτα καὶ τὰ περὶ τὸν παῖδα, πέμπουσα κήρυκα παρὰ

Κῦρον ἔλεγε τάδε· " Ἀπληστε αἵματος Κῦρε, μηδὲν ἐπαρ-  
 θῆς τῷ γεγονότι τῷδε πρήγματι, εἰ ἀμπελίνῳ καρπῷ,  
 τῷπερ αὐτοὶ ἐμπιπλάμενοι μαίνεσθε οὕτω ὥστε κατιόν- 5  
 τος τοῦ οἴνου ἐς τὸ σῶμα ἐπαναπλώειν ὑμῖν ἔπεα κακά,  
 τοιούτῳ φαρμάκῳ δολώσας ἐκράτησας παιδὸς τοῦ ἐμοῦ,  
 ἀλλ' οὐ μάχῃ κατὰ τὸ καρτερόν. νῦν ὦν μευ εὖ παραι-  
 νεούσης ὑπόλαβε τὸν λόγον. ἀποδοῦς μοι τὸν παῖδα  
 ἄπιθι ἐκ τῆσδε τῆς χώρας ἀζήμιος, Μασσαγετέων τρι- 10  
 τημορίδι τοῦ στρατοῦ κατυβρίσας. εἰ δὲ μὴ ταῦτα σὺ  
 ποιήσεις, ἥλιον ἐπόμνυμί τοι τὸν Μασσαγετέων δεσπό-  
 την, ἢ μὴν σε ἐγὼ καὶ ἀπληστον ἐόντα αἵματος κορέσω.

213. Κῦρος μὲν νυν τῶν ἐπέων οὐδένα τούτων ἀνε-  
 νειχθέντων ἐποιέετο λόγον· ὁ δὲ τῆς βασιλείης Τομύριος  
 παῖς Σπαργαπίσης, ὡς μιν ὅ τε οἶνος ἀνήκε καὶ ἔμαθε ἵνα  
 ἦν κακοῦ, δεηθεὶς Κύρου ἐκ τῶν δεσμῶν λυθῆναι ἔτυχε,  
 ὡς δὲ ἐλύθη τε τάχιστα καὶ τῶν χειρῶν ἐκράτησε, διερ- 5  
 γάζεται ἐωυτόν. καὶ δὴ οὗτος μὲν τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ τελευτᾷ.

214. Τόμυρις δέ, ὡς οἱ Κῦρος οὐκ ἐσήκουσε, συλ-  
 λέξασα πᾶσαν τὴν ἐωυτῆς δύναμιν, συνέβαλε Κύρῳ.  
 ταύτην τὴν μάχην, ὅσαι δὴ βαρβάρων ἀνδρῶν μάχαι ἐγέ-  
 νοντο, κρίνω ἰσχυροτάτην γενέσθαι, καὶ δὴ καὶ πυνθά-  
 νομαι οὕτω τοῦτο γενόμενον. πρῶτα μὲν γὰρ λέγεται 5  
 αὐτοὺς διαστάντας ἐς ἀλλήλους τοξεύειν, μετὰ δέ, ὡς σφι  
 τὰ βέλεα ἐξετετόξευτο, συμπεσόντας τῆσι αἰχμησί τε καὶ  
 τοῖσι ἐγχειριδίοισι συνέχεσθαι. χρόνον τε δὴ ἐπὶ πολλὸν  
 συνεστάναι μαχομένους καὶ οὐδετέρους ἐθέλειν φεύγειν·  
 τέλος δὲ οἱ Μασσαγέται περιεγενέατο· ἢ τε δὴ πολλῇ 10  
 τῆς Περσικῆς στρατιῆς αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ διεφθάρη, καὶ δὴ καὶ  
 αὐτὸς Κῦρος τελευτᾷ, βασιλεύσας τὰ πάντα ἐνὸς δέοντα  
 τριήκοντα ἔτεα. ἀσκὸν δὲ πλήσασα αἵματος ἀνθρωπηίου  
 Τόμυρις ἐδίζητο ἐν τοῖσι τεθνεῶσι τῶν Περσέων τὸν Κῦ-  
 ρου νέκυν, ὡς δὲ εὔρε, ἐπανῆκε αὐτοῦ τὴν κεφαλὴν ἐς τὸν 15  
 ἀσκόν· λυμαινομένη δὲ τῷ νεκρῷ ἐπέλεγε τάδε· Σὺ μὲν  
 ἐμὲ ζώουσάν τε καὶ νικῶσάν σε μάχῃ ἀπώλεσας, παῖδα

τὸν ἐμὸν ἐλὼν δόλω· σὲ δ' ἐγὼ κατάπερ ἠπείλησα, αἷμα  
 τος κορέσω. τὰ μὲν δὴ κατὰ τὴν Κύρου τελευταίην τοῦ βίου,  
 20 πολλῶν λόγων λεγομένων ὅδε μοι ὁ πιθανώτατος εἴρηται.

215. Μασσαγέται δὲ ἐσθῆτά τε ὁμοίην τῇ Σκυθικῇ  
 φορέουσι καὶ δίαιταν ἔχουσι, ἵππόται δὲ εἰσι καὶ ἄνιπ-  
 ποι (ἀμφοτέρων γὰρ μετέχουσι) καὶ τοξόται τε καὶ  
 αἰχμοφόροι, σαγάρεις νομίζοντες ἔχειν. χρυσῷ δὲ καὶ  
 5 χαλκῷ τὰ πάντα χρέωνται· ὅσα μὲν γὰρ ἐς αἰχμὰς καὶ  
 ἄρδεις καὶ σαγάρεις, χαλκῷ τὰ πάντα χρέωνται, ὅσα δὲ  
 περὶ κεφαλὴν καὶ ζωστήρας καὶ μασχαλιστήρας, χρυσῷ  
 κοσμέονται. ὡς δ' αὐτως τῶν ἵππων τὰ μὲν περὶ τὰ  
 στέρνα χαλκέους θώρηκας περιβάλλουσι, τὰ δὲ περὶ  
 10 τοὺς χαλινοὺς καὶ στόμια καὶ φάλαρα χρυσῷ. σιδήρῳ δὲ  
 οὐδ' ἀργύρῳ χρέωνται οὐδέν· οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδέ σφί ἐστι ἐν  
 τῇ χώρῃ, ὁ δὲ χρυσὸς καὶ ὁ χαλκὸς ἄπλετος.

216. Νόμοισι δὲ χρέωνται τοιοῖσδε· γυναῖκα μὲν  
 γαμέει ἕκαστος, ταύτησι δὲ ἐπὶ κοινὰ χρέωνται. τὸ γὰρ  
 Σκύθας φασὶ "Ἕλληνες ποιέειν, οὐ Σκύθαι εἰσὶ οἱ ποι-  
 εόντες ἀλλὰ Μασσαγέται· τῆς γὰρ ἐπιθυμήσει γυναικὸς  
 5 Μασσαγέτης ἀνὴρ, τὸν φαρετρεῶνα ἀποκρεμάσας πρὸ  
 τῆς ἀμάξης μίσγεται ἀδεῶς. οὖρος δὲ ἠλικίης σφί προ-  
 κέεται ἄλλος μὲν οὐδεὶς· ἐπεὰν δὲ γέρων γένηται κάρτα,  
 οἱ προσήκοντές οἱ πάντες συνελθόντες θύουσί μιν, καὶ  
 ἄλλα πρόβατα ἅμα αὐτῷ, ἐψήσαντες δὲ τὰ κρέα κατευω-  
 10 χέονται. ταῦτα μὲν τὰ ὀλβιώτατά σφί νενόμισται, τὸν  
 δὲ νούσῳ τελευτήσαντα οὐ κατασιτέονται, ἀλλὰ γῆ κρύ-  
 πτουσι, συμφορὴν ποιεύμενοι ὅτι οὐκ ἴκετο ἐς τὸ τυθῆ-  
 ναι. σπείρουσι δὲ οὐδέν, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ κτηνέων ζώουσι καὶ  
 ἰχθύων· οἱ δὲ ἀφθονοὶ σφί ἐκ τοῦ Ἀράξεω ποταμοῦ  
 15 παραγίνονται· γαλακτοπόται δὲ εἰσι. θεῶν δὲ μῦνον  
 ἥλιον σέβονται, τῷ θύουσι ἵππους. νόμος δὲ οὗτος τῆς  
 θυσίης· τῶν θεῶν τῷ ταχίστῳ πάντων τῶν θνητῶν τὸ  
 τάχιστον δατέονται.

# IONIC DIALECT.

---

THE Ionians, according to Herodotus (i. 145. vii. 94), were originally Pelasgians, and previous to the coming of Danaus dwelt in the Peloponnesus, and subsequently in Attica. They were called Ionians from a distinguished chieftain of the name of ION, son of Xuthus (viii. 44), who was son of Hellen and brother of Dorus and Æolus. Whether the names are real or not, the legend indicates the near relationship of the Hellenic tribes.\*

The name Ionia is found applied to various parts of Greece, and particularly to Attica and the northern part of the Peloponnesus, extending as far as the western coast, as we must believe from the perpetuation of the name in the *sea* and the *islands* which are still called *Ionian*.

It was a son of Codrus (Pausan. vii. 2. 1), who, quarreling unsuccessfully with his brother about the succession, and determining thereon to seek new seats beyond the seas, set the example of those emigrations which distinguish that period. Various expeditions from Hellas, composed mainly, but not exclusively, of Ionians, filled the Ægean coast of Asia Minor, the adjacent islands of Chios and Samos, and the intermediate station of the Cyclades. The limits of the Asiatic Ionia were, Doris on the south, and Æolia on the north. The confederation of colonies continued for some time to acknowledge Athens as the common metropolis. Separation, however, and diversity of circumstances, at length operated differences

\* The more probable opinion is, that the name came originally from the East (though it may have been repeated in the person of a son of Xuthus) from Javan, son of Japheth (Gen. x. 2). The argument is drawn out at length in *Boch. Geo. Sac.* P. i. lib. iii. cap. iii., and recently by Pococke ("India in Greece"), who locates the original seat of the Javans on the upper Indus.

in their habits of life and modes of thought, and, by consequence, in their forms of expression. Still the Attic and Ionic, from their having flowed longer together in the common channel, bore a nearer assimilation to each other, than to the other Hellenic dialects. The characteristic differences may be referred to two heads:—

1. The Ionic retained more of the simplicity of the earlier common language. This stability it possessed from having had so early a standard literature, and from its making less subsequent improvement. The language of Homer and Hesiod differ but little from the *modern* Ionic of Herodotus. Attica was distinguished by a higher intellectual activity. Strenuous rivalries and earnest endeavors to realize the highest forms of civilization, left no resource undeveloped. Athens was the university of Greece. There were not only the theatre and the bema, the porch and the academe, but there also were the schools of rhetoric and grammar. The language was carried to the highest point of cultivation.

2. The amenities of the country, the fertility of the soil, the mildness and salubrity of a climate tempered by the blandest breezes, all contributed to that luxurious easefulness of life in the Asiatic Ionia, and that voluptuousness of manner which became proverbial. (Vid. Hor. Carr. iii. 6. 21.) The language partook of the same mellowing influences till it acquired, in the softened articulation of its consonants, and in its profusion of vowel-sounds, a feminine charm of unrivaled elegance and sweetness. This appears:—

a. In the prevalence of the more attenuated vowels. There is in all languages, with the growth of refinement, a tendency to pass from the more open and masculine vowel-sounds to those of a finer, and, we might say, feminine quality. A ready illustration of this we have in our word *bleat*, from the Anglo-Saxon *blætan*, pronounced with the open sound of *a*, nearly as in *far*. And so our ancestors said *blâht*, which was purely imitative, without any disguise of refinement,—a pronunciation which is preserved in localities till the present time. But the sound *blâht* has given way, first to *blâte*, and now to *bleet*. The name of the animal is another illustration equally pertinent, which is, in German, *schaf*, in Low Dutch, *schaap*, Eng. *sheep*. The Doric, the rudest of the Grecian dialects, abounded in the *plateiasm* of the broad open *a*; the Attic had a happy mixture of manly strength and refinement; the Ionic went to the extreme of attenuating the vowel-sounds, substituting, for instance,  $\eta$  for *a*, and the close long  $\bar{o}$  sound for the diphthong *av*.

b. But it is not more the quality than the number of its vowel-sounds that gives character to a language. The ruder languages have comparatively few vowels. Witness some of the Teutonic and Slavonic dialects, which abound in the ruggedest combinations of consonants. The open page looks like a field of rocks. We are willing to admit of them what Byron has said, not so truly, of the English:

— “ Our harsh, northern, whistling, grunting guttural,  
Which we’re obliged to hiss and spit and sputter all.”

The language of warmer climates naturally has a more soft and liquid accent; and the Ionic particularly delights in a confluence of vowel-sounds, which gives an oily smoothness to its current. It seeks to secure this:—

a. By neglecting the *elision* where it is commonly used by the other dialects; as, δὲ ἐν, instead of δ’ ἐν.

β. By neglecting the *contraction*, particularly in nouns and verbs; as, νόος, ποιέω, instead of νοῦς, ποιῶ.

γ. By dialysis of the diphthong; as, εἶ for εἰ.

δ. It, further, inserts or prefixes a vowel where none belonged, especially ε before the flexible endings; as, ἀδελφεὸς for ἀδελφός, ἀσταχύων for σταχύων.

ε. Nay, it even displaces a consonant by a vowel, particularly ν by α in the third person plural of the objective form of the verb, making -ατο and -αται for -ντο, -νται.

c. In their choice of consonants the Ionians were equally nice. They put a softer letter in place of a harder, sometimes where it is difficult for us to see any connection between the two; but particularly they used the smooth mute for the aspirate of the same class; as, δέκομαι for δέχομαι, ἀπ’ ἦς for ἀφ’ ἦς.

Any language, having a moderate degree of refinement, naturally eschews two aspirations in immediate consecution; and in seeking to avoid the harshness, we instinctively soften the former. This, I think, is a universal principle of language, which our orthoëpists have entirely overlooked. Even Webster, following the authority of Walker, would have us pronounce such words as *transubstantiation*, *consociation*, with the double aspiration, *she-a-shun* (instead of *sĭ-a-shun*), which the cultivated ear, untrammelled of authority or habit, would hardly tolerate. In such matters, the Greeks had fine feelings, a quick ear, and a taste whose standard was rather the inspirations of nature than the dictates of authority.



Hence they said ἔχω for ἔχω; τρέφω for θρέφω; and so of all similar words. When a verb began with an aspirate, they used the tenuis in the reduplication. Even our heavier ears can perceive how ungainly to say φέφυκα instead of πέφυκα, and how unnatural to say φέπυκα. The application of this principle—that, namely, of softening the initial syllable in preference to the other—the Ionians carried so far as sometimes to transpose the breathings when they followed in the inverse order, and said κιθών for χιτών. So in ἐντεῦθεν, where the aspirate is preceded by two tenues, the rhythmical or musical force of the *alternation* of soft and hard breathings—analogueous to the recurrence of short and long syllables, and having so far an element of poetry—led them to say ἐνθεῦτεν.

---

The following tables, not aiming at all at a complete analysis of the dialect, will serve, it is hoped, to facilitate to the student the acquisition of a familiarity with its orthography, and so to remove at once the perplexities he would otherwise be likely to suffer.

NOTE.—The references, when not otherwise specified, are to the paragraphs in these introductory remarks, intending to point out the principles on which the changes are made.

## SYNOPTICAL TABLES.

### I.—OF VOWEL CHANGES.

#### A.

- α is put for ε; as, μέγαθος, τάμνω, κτάνω. (1.)
- “ “ “ η; as, ἀμφισβασίη for ἀμφισβησίη. (1.)
- is prefixed, apparently as a mere euphonic element (2. b. δ); as ἀσταφίς for σταφίς.
- stands for the diphthong αι; as, ἐτάρος for εταίρος.

#### E.

- ε is put for α; as, ἔρσην for ἄρσην—and particularly in the pure verbs as, δρέω for δράω. (2. a.)
- stands for the diphthong ει; as, ἀπόδεξις for ἀπόδειξις, ἐς for εἰς, μέζων for μείζων, and in the oblique cases of χεῖρ.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

[Continue](#)

\*Fair usage policy applies

## Ο.

ο is used for ω; as, ζόη (the accent drawn back) for ζωή.

## Υ.

υ is used for ι; as, in βύβλος and its derivatives, βρίγες for φρύγες.

— “ “ “ οι in ξυνός for κοινός.

## Ω.

ω is used for α; as, χρειώ for χρεία—and commonly in the diphthong αυ; as, θαυμαστός for θαυμαστός. Some write only the ω, θωμ-; others with diaeresis, θωÿ-.

— “ “ “ οη; as, χλωρός for χλοηρός; by contraction, as in the regular verbs in οω.

— comes also by crasis from οα; as, ώνήρ for ό άνήρ; τώπδ for τδ άπό, which some write τώ'πό; also from οι α, as ώνθρωποι, ώλλοι.

---

 TAB. II.—DIPHTHONGS.

## 1. CHANGE.

αι and ει lose the subjunct vowel. (See Tab. I., A. and E.)

αι is inserted before the termination of nouns of 1st decl.; as, ανάγκαίη for ανάγκη. (2. b. δ.)

αυ becomes ωυ. (See Tab. I. Ω.)

*Note.*—All the principal editions, following the Aldine, point with the diaeresis, ωÿ. Schw. agrees with Hermann and others of high authority in condemning this, and claims that the best Mss. do not countenance it. On such authority I accede to this punctuation; yet it is proper to say, the analogy of the other diphthongs forbids us to be quite certain that this is correct. (See below, 3. n.)

ευ stands for εο or εω; as, Λευτυχίδης for Λεοτυχίδης or Λεωτυχίδης—and generally where εο suffers contraction into ου; as, πλέον, πλεÿν; ποιεÿμενος for ποιούμενος.

οι is used for ει; as, οίκός for εικός.

— “ “ “ εοι; as, οίκώς for εοικώς.

ου is used for the vowel ο; as, νοÿσος, μοÿνος, for νόσος, μόνος. This comes by the insertion of ε first (2. b. δ) and then contraction.

2. RESOLUTION.

The diphthongs which result from contraction of the short vowels, suffer resolution; or, better to say, the vowels remain uncontracted. (2. b. β.) We have, therefore,

εε for ει: as, ῥέεθρον, ποίεε.

εο, οε, and οο, for ου; as, χρύσειον, ἀγαθοεργίη, νόος.

3. DIALYSIS.

The ι diphthongs, to wit, α, η, ω, ει, οι, suffer dialysis and at the same time α and ε are lengthened to η; thus,

α becomes ηϊ; as, Θρήϊκες for Θρᾶκες.

η “ ηϊ “ ληϊστῆς for ληστῆς.

ω “ ωϊ “ πατρώϊος for πατρᾶος.

ει “ ηϊ “ ἀνθρωπήϊος for ἀνθρώπειος (and so for the class of words in εϊος); κληϊς for κλείς, and some others.

οι “ οϊ “ ὄϊς for οἷς.

*Note.*—By analogy of these, should αυ become ωϋ? or does the difference of class destroy the analogy? (See above, 1. n.)

4. CRASIS.

Diphthongs arise by crasis at the meeting of vowels between two words; as,

ου from ο ε; as, οὔτερος, τοὔτερον.

— “ ου ε; as, τοὔμοῦ for τοῦ ἐμοῦ.

— “ ο ο; as, τοὔνομα for τὸ ὄνομα.

---

TAB. III.—OF CONSONANTS.

B.

βρίγες is found in Hdt. (vii. 73) as a Macedonian form of φρύγες. (2. c.)

Δ.

δ is used for σ; as, ὀδμή for ὀσμή.

*Note.*—The full primitive form of this word must have been ὀζμή = ὀσδμή fr. ὄζω (cf. ὄζη), which was softened by the suppression of one of the consonant elements, and differently in the different dialects. Ἰδμεν and Ἰσμεν are not orthographical variations; they are derived severally from εἶδω and ἴσθημι.

## Ζ.

ζ is used for γ; as, πεφυζώς.

— “ “ “ δ; as, ζορκάδες (= σ-δορκάδες) for δορκάδες.

*Note.*—Σ initial was a movable element. (See below, under Σ.)

## Κ.

κ is used for ν; as, κοεῖν for νοεῖν.

— “ “ “ π in the entire class of relative words κοῖος, δκοῖος, κότε, etc. for ποῖος, etc.

— “ “ “ χ, its cognate aspirate (2. c.).

## Ξ.

ξ is used for κ; as, ξυνός, i. e. ξοινός for κοινός.

— “ “ “ σ in the prep. ξύν for σύν; which also the Attics use.

— “ “ “ σσ; as, διξός for δισός.

## Π.

π is not changed by an aspirate following (2. c); as, ἀπ' ἧς for ἀφ' ἧς  
ἀπικνέομαι for ἀφικνέομαι.

## Σ.

σσ is used for θ; as, βυσσός for βυθός. Cf. πάθος *patior, passus, passion.*

— “ “ “ ττ in the numeral τέσσερες and its derivatives.

σ is prefixed to μικρός generally in Hdt.—a form common also to the Attic.

*Note.*—Σ, as the rudiment doubtless of a particle, is found as a prefix very extensively. Cf. *mash, s-mash; splash, s-splash; traho, s-traho; force, s-forza (Ital.); τέλλω, tollo, σ-τέλλω; τρέπω, σ-τρέπω; tego, σ-τέγω; labor, lapse, s-lip.*

## Τ.

τ is used for θ its cognate aspirate (2. c.); as, κατελεῖν for καθελεῖν.

— is interchanged with θ in ἐνθεῦτεν, ἐνθαῦτα. (2. c.)

---

TAB. IV.—NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

1. In all the cases of the singular (except the acc. of nouns in *as*), and in the dat. plur. *α* is changed to *η* (2. a.). The gen. plur. of all the

genders inserts  $\epsilon$  before the termination (2. b.  $\delta$ .); the gen. sing. also of masculines, of which  $ou$  becomes  $\omega$ .\*

2. Feminine nouns which end in  $\alpha$  in the common dialect.

	S.	P.
γλωσσ-	η	αι
ἱστορί-	ης	εων
ἡμέρ-	ἡ	ἡς, ἡσι
γενέ-	ην	ας

3. Feminines in  $\eta$  are inflected in the same way, and have the peculiarity, many of them, of being lengthened by the insertion of the diphthong  $\alpha\iota$  before the termination; as, ἀναγκαίη, γαληναίη, etc.

4. Masculines in  $\alpha\varsigma$  and  $\eta\varsigma$  differ only in that the former more commonly, but not invariably, make the acc. sing. in  $\eta\nu$ , and the latter in  $\epsilon\alpha$ . The plur. is the same as in the feminine.

βορέ-	ης
δεσπότη-	εω
καμβύσ-	ἡ
μίδ-	εα, ην
κανδαύλ-	ἡ

5. Adjectives in  $\alpha$  and  $\eta$  conform to these inflections. Of those in  $-υς$ ,  $-εια$ ,  $-υ$ , the  $\iota$  is dropped; as, βαθεία, ἡμεσέη.

TAB. V.—NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

This declension makes the gen. plur.  $-\epsilonων$ ; dat.  $-οισι$ ; and the gen. sing. (besides the common form) in  $-οιο$ , and rarely (perhaps it is confined to a few proper names) in  $-\epsilonω$ ; as,

λόγ-ος, οἶο, -ω, etc.  
 Κροίσ-ος, έω, ῶ, etc.  
 ἄνθρωπ-οι, έων, οισι, etc.

TAB. VI.—NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Nouns in  $-\epsilonυς$  (rarely those in  $-\etaς$  and  $-\iotaς$ ) have  $\eta$  or  $\epsilon$  for the union-vowel, and do not suffer contraction; as,

\* Perhaps the true analysis of this gen. sing. is, to say that  $ou$  is resolved into  $\epsilonο$ , and then the  $ο$  lengthened.

βασιλ-εύς	βασιλ-ῆες, -έες
-ῆος, -έος	-ῆων, -έων
-ῆϊ, -έϊ	-εὔσι
-ῆα, -έα	-ῆας, -έας
-εὺ	

Some Mss. have *πολήων* in Hdt. ii. 137, but the reading is not approved.

2. Nouns in *-is*, with a pure stem, retain the *ι* throughout, with which the *ι*—the case-ending—of the dat. sing. coalesces; as,

(rarely)	(rarely)
πόλις,	πόλιες, -ις, -ηες
πόλιος, -ηος	πολίων, (V. supra, 1.)
πόλι, -ηϊ	πολίεσι, -ισι
πάλιν, -ηα	πόλιας, -ῖς, -ηας

3. Linguals in *-is* and *-as* drop the mute, and *α* is changed to *ε*; as, Ὀσιρις, Ὀσίριος (like πόλις) for Ὀσίριδος; κέρας, κέραος (for κέρατος), κέρεος, which form it retains throughout, uncontracted; as,

κέρ-ας	κέρ-εα
κέρ-εος	κερ-έων
κέρ-εϊ	κέρ-εσι

4. The contraction is regularly neglected (2. b. β.); but neuters in *-os*, gen. *-eos*, sometimes have *-eus* (Tab. II. 1.)

5. Nouns in *ω̂* make the acc. sing. in *-ου̂ν*; as, Ἰου̂ν, Hdt. i. 1.

6. The word *ναῦς* is in Ion. *νηῦς* and *νηῦς*, and has in the inflected forms, *η* or *ε*, as *νηός*, *νεός*, except the dat. sing., which has only *η*. The dat. plur. has *νησι*, *νήεσσι*, and *νέεσσι*.

## TAB. VII.—THE PRONOUN AND ARTICLE.

### 1. THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

1st P.	2d P.	3d P.	Neut.
ἐγώ	σύ	—	
ἐμέο, ἐμεῦ, μεῦ	σέο, σεῦ	οὔ, ἔο, εὔ	
ἐμοί, μοί	σοί, τοί	οἶ, ἔοι	
ἐμέ, μέ	σέ	μίν	
ἡμέες	ὑμέες	—	
ἡμέων	ὑμέων	σφέων	
ἡμῖν	ὑμῖν	σφίσι, σφι	
ἡμέας	ὑμέας	σφέας, σφε	σφέα

1st P.	2d P.	3d P.
νώ, νῶϊ	σφώ, σφῶϊ	G. D. σφῶϊν
νῶν, νῶϊν	σφῶν, σφῶϊν	A. σφώ, σφῶέ

2. THE ITERATIVE αὐτός.—This pronoun inserts ε (2. b. δ.) before the termination in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and in all the oblique cases, except the Acc. Sing. Masc. ; as,

αὐτός	αὐτέη	αὐτό
αὐτέου	αὐτέης, etc.	
αὐτέων		
αὐτέοισι	αὐτῆς, αὐτῆσι, αὐτέησι, etc.	

3. THE REFLEXIVES.—The reflexives change the diphthong *av* to *ωι* (Tab. II. 1.) almost uniformly, and are inflected as αὐτός, except that the epenthesis of the ε is rare. In the first person, ε appears between the component parts ; as, ἐμεωυτοῦ ; σεωυτοῦ ; ἐωυτοῦ, ἐωυτέου.

4. THE ARTICLE AND RELATIVE.—The article has the inflections the same as nouns of the first and second declensions. The forms τέω (Hdt. i. 11.) and τέοισι (Id. i. 37.), which Mattaire ranks as articles, belong to the indefinite τίς. (See below, No. 5.)

The relative also follows the same form, making gen. οἶο, ἔης ; dat. plur. οἶσι, ἦσι, etc. Besides this, it had—and in Hdt. more commonly—the form of the article in all the oblique cases, and in the neut. ; that is, the *article*, in the generic sense, retained a common form, both in its pre-positive relation, and in its twofold office of demonstrative and relative, in its post-positive relation ; as,

ὅς	ἦ	τό
τοῦ	τῆς	etc.
οἶ	αἶ	τά
τῶν	τῶν	
τοῖσι	τῆσι	etc.

5. THE INDEFINITE.

τίς	τί	τινές	ἄσσα
τέο, τεῦ		τέων	
τέω, τῶ		τέοισι	
τινά		τινάς	

The compound ὅστις drops the σ, and in the Epic poets the τ is doubled in the neuter and in the gen. sing. ; as,

ὅστις	ὅ τι, ὅττι
ὅτεο	ὅτευ, ὅττεο, ὅττευ, etc.



## TAB. VIII.—THE VERB

## 1. GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS.

- a. The *augment* and *reduplication* are omitted; as, *ποίηον* for *ἐποίηον*; *ἔχον* for *εἶχον*.
- (α.) The *Perfect* sometimes has the simple augment; as, *ἔκτῃμαι* for *κέκτῃμαι*.
- (β.) The *Pluperfect* sometimes has the simple augment without the reduplication; as, *ἐβούλευντο*; and sometimes the reduplication without the second augment; as, *βεβούλευντο* for *ἐβεβούλευντο*.
- b. *Pure contracted* verbs omit the ordinary contraction; as, *ποιέω*, *ποιέοιμι*.
- c. *Impure* verbs often receive *ε* epenthetic, and are then inflected as the pure verbs; as, *ῥιπτέω*; *τυπτέω*, *τυπτήσω*; *χαιρέω*, *χαιρήσω*.
- d. Verbs in *-άω* change the *α* to *ε*; as, *ὄρέω*, *φοιτέω*.
- e. Verbs in *-έω* retain *ε* as the union-vowel in aor. 1; as, *ἐπόθεσαν* from *ποθέω*.
- f. Verbs in *-άω*, and rarely those in *-έω*, have *η* in the contraction in place of *ᾱ* or *ει*; as, *ὄρην*, *φοιτῆ*, *κινήσθαι*.
- g. Verbs in *-άω* and *-έω* preceded by *ο*, change *οη* in the derived tenses to *ω*; as, *βοάω*, *βοήσω*, *βώσω*, *βῶσαι*; *νοέω*, *νοήσω*, *νώσω*, *νώσας*.

## 2. PECULIAR TENSE FORMS.

1. The *Iterative* or *Continuative Form*.—A new *imperfect* is formed by adding *-σκ-* to the tense-stem, with the indicative mode-vowel, of the impf. and aorr., both act. and mid.; as, *τύπτ-εσκ-ον*, *τυπτ-εσκ-όμεν*. In Hdt. this form is made only on the stem of the impf. and rarely that of aor. 2.

*Note*.—The grammarians fail to explain this tense, or to designate it properly by the term *iterative*. I have added that of *continuative*, as better meeting the sense. It contains the former. A continued or complex action may be made up of the iteration of the same act or acts, which taken separately may not suffer protraction or continuity; as continued *striking* is an iteration of *blows*. So of what is *wont* to be done, on occasion or at intervals;—the repeated acts constitute a *series*. This form is a legitimate development, by that principle of language which seeks to express the continuative state of an action by protract-

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

b. *Middle and Passive Voice.*

1. In the 2d pers. sing. -σαι and -σο in the Pres. Impf. and Fut. and Aor. Mid. drop the σ, and the vowels do not suffer contraction as in the Attic, except εο sometimes is contracted to ευ; e. g.

Full form, βουλεύ-σαι.	Ion. -σαι.	Att. η.
" -εσο.	-εο, -ευ.	-ου.
" -ασο.	-αο.	-ω.

2. The 3d pers. plur. -νται, -ντο, changes ν to α (2. b. ε), and a preceding union-vowel to ε. This enables the impure verbs to take the regular forms in the perf. pass. instead of the periphrasis of the participle.

Pres. βούλ-ομαι, -σαι, -εται.	Subj. 2d sing. —, -ηαι. —
-εσθον, -εσθον.	
-όμεθα, -εσθε, -έαται.	Opt. 3d pers. plur. βουλοί-ατο.
Verbs in -αω,	" " " " τιμώ-ατο.

Impf. βουλ-όμην, -εο (-ευ), -ετο.	3d plur. -έατο.
-----------------------------------	-----------------

Ionic (ε)-τυπτ-ε	} -σκ	{	-όμην, -εο, -ετο.
Impf. (ε)-τυψ-α			— —
(ε)-τυπ-ε			— — -έατο.

Fut. Mid. τεύξ-ομαι, -σαι, etc.	
φαν-έομαι, -έαι, etc.	Subj. φάν-ηαι.

Aor. Mid. έδεξ-άμην, -αο, -ατο.	3d plur. -έατο.	Opt. -αίατο.
έγεν-όμην, -εο -ετο.	" " -έατο.	" -οίατο.
άπικ-όμην, -εο (-ευ), -έτο.	" " -έατο.	" οίατο.

Perf. τετίμ-ημαι, -ησαι, -ηται.	3d plur. τετιμ-έαται.
έστρα-μμαι, -ψαι, -πται.	" " έστράφ-αται.
έφθαρ-μαι, -σαι, -ται.	" " έφθάρ-αται.
τέτα-γμαι, -ξαι, -κται.	" " τετάχ-αται.
κεχώρι-σμαι (fr. χωρίζω).	" " κεχωρίδ-αται. (Tab. iii. Δ.)

Pluperf. πεφιλ-ήμην, -ησο, -ητο.	3d plur. -έατο.
άπί-γμην, -ξο, -κτο.	" " άπίκ-ατο.
έστρά-μμην, -ψο, -πτο.	" " έστράφ-ατο
τετά-γμην, -ξο, -κτο.	" " τετάχ-ατο.
έσκευά-σμην, -σο, -στο.	" " έσκευάδ-ατο. (Tab. iii. Δ.)

(2.) *Verbs in μι.*

a. *Regular.*—Verbs in *-ημι, -ωμι* are frequently inflected as from the forms *-εω, -οω*, particularly in the pres. and impf. 2d and 3d pers. sing. which are generally contracted. The subj. of verbs in *-ημι* is likewise resolved by *ε*, and remains uncontracted.

The 3d pers. plur. reduces *ντσι*, by the change of *ν* to *α* (as above), to *-ασι*.

Pres. *τίθ-ημι, -έεις, εἶς, -έει, εἶ* — *-έασι*. Subj. *τιθ-έω, -έης, έη, etc.*  
*δίδ-ωμι, -όεις, οἶς, -όει, οἶ* — *-όασι*.  
*δείκν-υμι, -υασι*.

Impf. *ἐτίθ-ην, -εες, εις, -εε, ει*.  
*ἐδίδ-ων, -οες, ους, -οε, ου*.

The Imperfect has also the aoristic inflection *-εα* in the 1st and 3d pers. sing. of those in *-ημι*; as,  
*ἐτίθ-εα* — *-εε*.

Aor. 1 has sometimes the regular characteristic *σ*, as if from the *ω* form; as, *πάρησα* for *πάρηκα*.

Perf. *ἔστε-α, -ας, etc.* Part. *ἔστε-ώς, -ῶσα, ῶς*; gen. *-ῶτος, etc.*  
 Inf. *ἔσταναι, rarely ἑστάμεναι*.

Aor. 2.—Subj. *στέ-ω, στέ-ης, στέ-η*; *στέ-ωμεν, στέ-ητε, στέ-ωσι*.

b. *Irregular.*

*εἶμι, to be.*

Pres.—Plur. *εἰμέν—ἔασι*. Subj. *ἔω, ἔης, ἔη, ἔησι; ἔωμεν, etc.*

Impf. *ἔα, ἔας ἔης, ἔην ἦε*; — *ἔατε, ἔσαν, ἔσαν*.  
*ἔσκ-ον, -ες, -ε, etc.*

Fut.—2d pers. *ἔσσει*.

Inf. *ἔμεναι, ἔμμεναι*; not found in Hdt.

Part. *ἔών, ἐούσα, ἐόν*.

*εἶμι, to go.*

Impf. *ἦια, — ἦιε; — ἦισαν*.



# NOTES.

## BOOK I.—CLIO.

PROEMIUM.—The simplicity, directness, and brevity of this proemium commend it as a model. In comprehensiveness of design and felicity of execution, the world has seen no historic production, which, compared with its own age, surpasses that of Herodotus: none has been proclaimed with less ostentation of its author.

1. ἩΡΟΔΟΤΟΥ . . . ἥδε. For the inflections of Ἄλ. and ἱστ. see Tabb. VI. and IV. — Ἀπόδειξις, I. for ἀπόδειξις (see Tab. I.). — ἱστορίη properly signifies *knowledge* as the result of *inquiry*; also *inquiring*. — ἀποδ. lit. *a showing off*, i. e. *publication, exhibition*. — ἥδε generally refers to what follows; οὗτος to what precedes. The sentence may be translated—*This, (is) an exposition of the historical researches of Herodotus the Halicarnassian.* — 2. ὥς, *so that, in order that*, introduces the author's apology or reason for publishing: *That human events (τὰ γινόμενα ἐξ ἀνθρώπων are the things which transpire among men and by their agency. ἀνθ. gen. caus. eff. C. § 339. and 380. K. § 373. Rem. 1.) may not become effaced (ἐξίτηλα clean gone, fr. ἐξίεναι) by time, and that their deeds both great and wonderful; those on the one hand (τὰ μὲν) exhibited (ἀποδεχθέντα fr. ἀποδείκνυμι) by the Hellenes (Ἑλλ. dat. ag. A. R. 81. Rem. and R. 97. K. § 384. (11.) C. § 417.) and those by the Barbarians on the other, may not be uncelebrated—(to wit) both other things, and for what cause (i. e. those things on account of which) they warred on one another.* This sentence is remarkable for its distinctive particles, which I have endeavored to express fully, if not elegantly, in the translation. The two clauses commencing at τὰ τε ἄλλα are specific appositives to ἔργα. — θωυμαστὰ, I. for θαν-. They err who point with the diaeresis -ωü-.

CAP. I.—1. νυν = οὖν *inceptive*, and distinguished from νῦν by the accent. — οἱ λόγοι, *the historians*, or in general, *the learned men.* — 2. αἰτίους, *authors*, i. e. *first in the fault to cause the enmity* (διαφορῆς, I.

η for α) that arose between Asia and Greece. — 3. Ἐρυθρῆς. The learner must not confound the Erythraean with the modern Red sea. — ἀπικομένους, I. for ἀφικ. C. § 69. I. a. A. Cap. II. *coming from*. The separate ἀπὸ with the gen. object here shows the full construction of this verb. When these are omitted the compound ἀπικ- is still used, though the English reader, where the connection requires the rendering *arrive at*, would expect the simple verb; and in this case the ἀπο- has reference to a place of departure, necessarily implied, with its own idea of *motion from*, though it cannot be translated. — 4. τὸν καὶ νῦν οἰκ., *which also now they inhabit*. The rel. pro. in the oblique cases takes the form of the article. (See Tab. VII.) οἰκέουσιν for οἰκοῦσιν. — 5. ναυτιλίησι μακρῆσι.—dat. endings ησι for αῖς. (See Tab. IV.) — 6. ἀπαγινέοντας fr. ἀπαγινέω, I. for ἀπάγω. — 7. ἐσαπικνέεσθαι. The learner will observe in this word three peculiarities of the dialect; εσ- for εισ-; απ- for αφ- (i-); and εε- for ει-. — καὶ δὴ καί. This cluster of particles, of frequent recurrence, seems to direct the attention upon a *particular* instance, after a general statement. This use of it rises legitimately from the meaning of its component parts. The first καὶ is connective—*and*; the second is superadditory—*also*; δὴ may be defined as a particle *affirmative, relative*; i. e. it is confirmative of, and relative to, a known fact, either previously stated or of supposed notoriety. In the former case it is equivalent to, *the said*; *the above*; *the aforementioned*, and such relative phrases; in the latter, to, *the well known*; *the celebrated*, or some corresponding phrase. Render then, τῇ τε ἄλλῃ . . . καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐς Ἄργος, *both elsewhere—and, which-is-notorious-and-specially-concerns-my-subject, also to Argos*. — 8. τὸ δὲ . . . χώρα, *now this Argos*, —(δὲ is elegantly used in narrative as a particle of transition, like the Latin *autem*, and the Eng. *now*)—*at that time* (C. § 439. n.) *had* (itself) *before* (i. e. *excelled*) *in all respects the* (cities) *in the region now called Hellas*. The acc. of time as used here comes properly under the principle of acc. of specification. The ellipsis of the reflexive pronoun with ἔχω is common, as with the Lat. *habeo*; τῶν is demonstrative, *those*, the idea of the *genus*, cities, being implied by the *individual*, Argos, as subject. — 10. ἐς δὴ τὸ Ἄ. τοῦτο, *to this Argos, as I said*; or, *as aforesaid*. — διατίθεσθαι τὸν φόρτον, *were disposing of the cargo*. The historic inf. always depends on some finite verb; λέγουσιν is often used; here it is φασί in the first line. — 11. ἀπ' (I. for ἀφ') ἧς, sc. ἡμέρης = ἀπὸ τῆς ἡμέρης ἧ. — 12. σφι. The dative in such a place seems to perform the double office of the *agent* after the verb, and the dat. possessive;—*their goods being nearly all sold out* (and by themselves, of course). — ἐλθεῖν . . . θυγατέρα. See above on καὶ δὴ καί, l. 7. *There came . . . both many other women, and—also the king's daughter*, which circumstance is

pointed out by the δὴ as matter of notoriety, and that to which the author would *specially* call attention. — 14. τὸ δέ . . . Ἰνάχου. The inf. still depends on φασί. They say that *the name to her, according to the same thing which also the Hellenes say, was Io the* (daughter, C. § 447. B. § 125. 5.) *of Inachus; i. e. the Hellenic account of the name agrees with that of the Persian historians, whose authority he is now following.* — 16. ὠνέεσθαι . . . μάλιστα, that they *purchased of the wares* (φορτίων, gen. part. A. R. 62. C. § 366. K. § 273. 3. S. § 178.) *those things of which there was to them especially a desire; i. e. what they most desired.* — 18. διακελευσαμένους implies a scheme previously agreed upon—*having enjoined one another* (aor. mid.), and might be rendered freely, *at a concerted signal.* — τὰς . . . πλεῦνας, I. cont. of πλεονας (Tab. II.) *the more* sc. γυναικας, i. e. the greater number = *the most.* So in some modern languages, the only way to express the superlative is to prefix the article to the comparative. A. R. 39. Rem. 2. — 20. ἐσβαλ- . . . Αἰγύπτου, and *having cast* (the women) *into the ship, they went sailing away upon Egypt.* In such phrases as οἶχ- απο- the inf. expresses the *generic*, and the participle the *specific* action. The tendency to this kind of circumlocution is natural and universal; also the use of verbs of motion and abstract action to substitute defective inflections; e. g. *do, did*, as auxiliaries; βῆ δ' ἔναι, Il. passim, *he went to go*; so in Eng. *he was going to do*; and Lat. *amabam* = *am-* (*a*, union-vowel) *βην*, *I went loving*; *amabo* = *am-a-βεω*, *I go to love.* In Italian, *venire* and *andare*, *to go*, are used in the sense of *essere*, *to be*; e. g. *vien riputato*, *it comes (is) reputed*; *mi vien detto*, *it comes (is) said to me*; *vo facendo*, *I go (am) doing*; *andrà rovinato*, *he will go (be) ruined.*

REMARK.—This chapter presents several facts of great historic moment; as, 1. That the Persians had at so early a date learned men, and specially historians, to whose works Herodotus had access. 2. The migration of the Phœnicians from the Erythræan to the Mediterranean sea. 3. That in those remote times commerce flourished on the great inland seas, of which the Phœnicians were the principal merchants. This Inachus, father of Io, founded Argos about the middle of the nineteenth century B. C.; 300 years before Cecrops founded Athens; near 400 years before the Trojan Dardanus; about five centuries before the similar abduction of Helen, and near a century before the exode of Israel. More particularly,

Argos founded . . . . .	1856 B. C.
Exode . . . . .	1766 “
Athens founded . . . . .	1557 “
Dardanus . . . . .	1482 “
Troy fell . . . . .	1184 “



2.—2. οὐκ ὡς Φοίνικες, *not as the Phoenicians*. Duae nobis de Iūa in Ægyptum accessu exponuntur sententiae: Persae à Phoenicibus raptam; Phoenices sponte se advehendam dedisse adseverabant.—Schw. Some editions and Mss. read Ἕλληνες instead of Φοίνικες, incorrectly, as I must believe. Wess. sums up the authorities, and apparently all in favor of Φοί-, and I suspect would have adopted that reading but for the occasion it offered for a witticism. The temptation was too strong for him not to say “Sed suum cuique iudicium. Ἕλληνας sedibus evertere nolui; neque enim omnia Herodoti editori licent.” — καὶ . . . πρῶτον, *and this first began the injuries*, i. e. *this was the first* of the acts of violence. — ἀδικ- depends on ἄρξαι. S. § 184. A. R. 59. C. § 350. Rem. The tautology in ἄρξαι πρῶτον is common in Gr. and in colloquial Eng. and is not unknown to our classics; as Milton—“Who first seduced them?” Cf. the compound ὑπάρχω, which passed quite into the sense of the substantive copula, *to be*. — 4. φασί, *they say*, indefinite subject, to denote the common tradition. — τῆς Φοινίκης, sc. πόλιν, in apposition with Τύρον. C. § 361. a. K. § 373. Rem. 4. (a.) — 5. προσσχόντας, sc. ναῦν, *putting in, touching at*. — 6. εἶησαν . . . Κρηῆτες, *but these must have been Cretans*, i. e. probably were. — 7. ταῦτα . . . γενέσθαι, *these things therefore* (or *as is evident, as you see, δὴ*) *were to them but just retaliation*. The illative force of δὴ arises from its relative character as explained above (§ I. l. 7)—*affirming* something which is now *made evident*. Of *time*, δὴ, like *jam*, includes the past down to the present, and ταῦτα—δὴ in this place might be rendered, *thus far, haec- adhuc*. — ἴσα σφι πρὸς ἴσα, *quid pro quo, tit for tat*. The text exhibits the order of these words found in most Mss. and Edd.; but some place σφι after the second ἴσα. It seems almost impracticable to break in upon an idiomatic phrase like this; as if we would say *tit to them for tat*,—*quid to them pro quo*: and if Herodotus was, like Sallust for instance, fond of idiomatic quaintness, this argument would be conclusive. On the other hand, it is probable he wished to break the severity of idiomatic expression, to make it harmonize the better with his flowing narrative style. — 9. καταπλώσαντας, I. for κ- πλευσ- from πλέω, for which Hdt. commonly uses πλώω. — νηῖ fr. ναῦς, I. νηῦς. — Αἶάν. Αἶα was the capital city of Colchis, on the river Phasis. — 10. διαπρηξαμένους . . . ἀπίκατο, *having accomplished also the other things on account of which they had come*. — 11. ἀπίκατο, I. pl. pf. pass. 3d pers. plu. B. § 103. 22. C. ¶ 32. § 50. and 46. β. Tab. VIII. — 14. τοὺς . . . ἐκείνοισι. A strict rendering of this passage is necessarily obscure, by reason of the paucity of our pronouns compared with the distinctive variety of the Greek. The sense will be plain by observing that the leading subject refers to the Hellenes—*they answered*; and that ἐκείνοι

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

REMARK.—The date of the fall of Troy is placed, by general agreement of chronologers, at 1184 B. C. The abduction of Helen, then, must have been not far from 1200 B. C., and the δευτέρῃ γενεῇ would place the Argonautic expedition and the elopement of Medea near the middle of the thirteenth century B. C.

4.—1. Μέχρι . . . τούτου sc. χρόνου, *thus far then*, ὦν = οὖν; μὲν correlative with δὲ serves to render the disjunctive relation of the clauses more distinct. B. § 149. 11. — μούνας, I. for μόνας (see Tab. II.). — 2. τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου, C. § 478. γ. S. § 141. n. 1. The real construction of this phrase is, that the prepositional clause ἀπὸ τ. is substantive, to which τὸ is article, as an acc. of spec. of time. — “Ἑλλ. . . γενέσθαι, *the Hellenes evidently (δὴ) were greatly at fault*. — 3. προτέρους is correlative with ἤ; *before that*. The learner will observe the tendency of the Greek, and more especially of the Latin, to attach the modifying word directly to the subj. instead of the pred. which causes them to use the adj. where the Eng. would use the adv. qualifier; though in this case the Gr. sometimes said πρὶν—ἤ, and the Lat. generally *priusquam*. — 4. τὸ μὲν νυν . . . εἶναι. For subj. of νομίζειν supply pro. referring to the Asiatics, and make τὸ . . . ἀρπάζειν subj. of εἶναι,—*to carry off women they considered to be the work of unjust men*. — 5. τὸ δέ, *but*, corr. with τὸ μὲν. — ἀρπασθεισέων, sc. γυναικῶν, gen. dependent, perhaps the grammars would compel us to say, on σπουδήν, as τιμωρέειν takes the dative. It is in fact the gen. of *motive cause*, C. § 372, to which follows, *to make a serious matter of it* (σπου- ποι-) as the *generic*, and *to avenge it*, as the *specific*, consequent action. — 6. ἀνοήτων. Supply the ellipsis, and construe same as ἀδίκων. — 7. μηδεμίην ὥρην, *no care, or concern*. Cf. ὀλιγορέω, to give *little care or time*, i. e. *to neglect*. This word (ὥρην) is the same etymologically as ὥρη. Usage made a convenient distinction by aid of the *spiritus*. The sense of *season* seems to have been the primary one, which marks the word as probably cognate also to ἔαρ (in Theocr. εἶαρ), YEAR, *spring*, Swed. *aor*; and secondary was that of the business or task of the season, *care*, analogous to the Fr. *journée*, signifying either the *day* or the *day's task—journey*. The Lat. *cura* and *hora* equally imply the aspirate as the primary form. Cf. also δράω, the primary idea of which is still preserved in the idiomatic use of the imp. ὄρα, *take care, look to it*. — 8. ἐβουλέατο, I. for -οντο, Impf. Ind. — 9. σφέας . . . ποιήσασθαι, *themselves indeed therefore (δὴ), to wit, those from Asia* (τοὺς in appo. with σφέας), *the Persians say, make no account of the women being carried off*. — 13. κατελείν fr. καθαιρέω, a. 2d. — ἠγήσασθαι depends on λέγ- Πέρσαι. The Per. say *that they considered*. — 14. τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, sc. ἔθνος or γένος. — τὴν γὰρ . . . κεχωρί-

σθαι, for the Persians claim as their own (οἰκείωνται, I. for -οὐνται) Asia and the barbarian nations dwelling therein, but Europe and the Hellenic race they consider to be separated from themselves.

5.—2. σφίσι ἐοῦσαν, was to them. For this use of the dat. see C. § 310. note, or else take σφίσι as the dat. poss. and looking rather to ἔχθρης as its object: the enmity which they had and exercised towards the Hellenes. The part. is used instead of the inf. to denote “the actual existence of the idea designated by it.” K. § 311. 18. Rem. — ἐοῦσ-, I. for οῦσ-. — τῆς ἔχθρης τῆς. The article postpositive retains its original character of a demonstrative, and then only it performs strictly the office of an article, articulum, ἄρθρον, a joint; binding together related clauses. — 4. ἀρπαγῆ, by violence. — 6. ἐμίσητο, Impf. The form μίσγω prevailed in the old Epic and Ion. dialects instead of μίγνυμι, which mostly supplanted it in the Attic. — 7. ἐπεὶ . . . ἐοῦσα, and when she learned that she was pregnant;—novit se gravem esse. The construction is idiomatic. We consider the reflexive pro. understood, to which in Eng. and mostly in Lat. we refer the complimentary clause. In Greek, however, this compliment adopts the grammatical subject of the principal verb. C. § 633. and 614. ζ. A. R. 107. K. § 310. 3. — 11. ἐρέων, part. fut. denoting purpose. I come not to say, i. e. with the intention of asserting. — ἄλλως κως, otherwise somehow; κως, I. for πως (Tab. III.), has the office to render the word or clause which it qualifies indefinite. — τὸν . . . λόγου, but whom (τὸν) I myself know . . . him having designated, I will go forward to the subsequent (part) of my subject. — 14. σμικρὰ is the proper form of this adj. in the older language, and especially in the Ion. though some editors write for Hdt. μικρός after a final s. — 15. ἐπεξιών. Literally, coming-out-upon, i. e. describing. — τὰ γὰρ . . . γέγονε, for what ones (sc. ἄστυα) formerly (τὸ πάλαι sc. ὄν. The art. is acc. spec. as to that which was of old. C. § 478) were great, many of them have become small. — 16. ἐπ’ ἐμεῦ, in my time. ἐπὶ with a gen. of a person or event signifies upon, in respect of time, i. e. in the time of. A. Syn. Prep. 14. — 17. ἀνθρωπηΐην, I. for -πείαν. — 18. τῶντῶ = τῶ ἀντῶ.

REMARKS.—After mentioning these general and uncertain accounts of the early causes of complaint between the Hellenes and the Asiatics, our author commences now on what he considers reliable history, by introducing Cræsus as the first foreigner who made encroachments on the Grecian states. But, according to his manner, on approaching the subject, he runs back, by way of digression, upon the previous history of the country of Cræsus, fetching up a brief, general outline of it, from the earliest times, as preparatory to the more ample discussion of the

subject that lies directly in his way. It is thus, by a well-connected series of digressions, he manages to compass the entire range of ancient history, and to weave, as it were an epic song, the countless variety of time, and place, and character, and act, and incident, into an unbroken story of ever-pleasing diversity, while he still keeps in view a single object, and intends all this preliminary array to the aggrandizement of the final issue—the decisive conflict, namely, of the Greeks with the barbarians. Judged by the common *historic* standard, this is loose composition; judged by the standard of *art*, it is regular; and combines, in the style of artless narrative, the grandeur of the epic with the artistic power of tragedy.

6.—1. γένος, acc. spec. — Ἀλυάττω, I. ending for -ου, 1st decl. — 2. τύραννος . . . ποταμοῦ, *ruler of the nations within the river Halys, i. e. on the hither or Grecian side of the river.* The term τύρ. primarily signified, one who, by revolution or usurpation, established himself to be king in a country which before had been free; and the successors of such a *conqueror*, though they received the crown by regular inheritance, bore the same title. Hence the kings of most of the nations around them, whose governments were less stable, were by the Greeks called τύρανοι, not necessarily implying the odious associations of *tyrant*. The Persian king, who, in the imagination of the Greeks, belonged to an unchanging line of ancient monarchy, and the Spartan, whose succession was fixed by the law of Lycurgus, were always dignified with the title of βασιλεύς. — 3. ὅς . . . ἀνεμὸν, *which flowing from the south (μεσαμ-, I. for μεσημ-) between the Syrians and Paphlagonians (naming the people instead of the country), goes out towards the north wind.* The conception of the abstract notion of the points of compass, was subsequent to certain concrete notions which served to designate them; as the *midday* position, or the *rising* or *setting*, of the sun,—*meridian*, μεσημβρία, ἀνατόλη, *ortus*, *occidentalis*; or the direction of a constellation, *septentrionalis*; or a particular wind, βορέας, *Aquilo*, *Notus*, *Eurus*, etc. — 5. βαρβάρων, gen. of the whole with the partitive πρῶτος. — τῶν, rel. in gen. by attraction. K. § 332. 6. C. § 526. — 6. τοὺς μὲν, *some*, limited by Ἑλλήνων as gen. of the whole. — κατεστρέψατο . . . ἐς φ. ἀπ., *subjected to the bringing of tribute.* — 7. τοὺς δὲ φ. προσ., *others he attached to himself as friends.* — 11. στράτευμα is subj. of ἐγένετο, and καταστροφή, *subjugation*, the subj. pred.

REMARKS.—The inroad of the Cimmerians here alluded to is probably the same as that mentioned in c. 15, in the reign of Ardys. They are there said to have been driven by the Scythians from their accustomed haunts into Asia, and to have taken Sardis, except the acropolis.

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

SUMMARIUM.—The five following chapters join the history promised in the οὔτα of c. 7,—the substance of which is:—c. 8. Candaules, madly enamored of the beauty of his wife, praises her to Gyges, his most trusty minister. Fearing that his words do not sufficiently waken the admiration of Gyges, he proposes that he should see her for himself, divested of her garments. G. remonstrates against so abhorrent a proposition.—c. 9. Cand. urges; Gyg. yields.—c. 10. Cand. conceals G. in his own bedchamber, whereby the queen is exposed. G. in escaping from the room is discovered by the queen, who conceals all emotion, but plots revenge.—c. 11. The queen, next day, sends for G. and proffers him the alternative, either to assassinate his master and take her to wife and the kingdom, or to die himself.—c. 12. G. chooses life, obeys the queen, and becomes king.

13.—1. Βασιληίην, I. for βασιλείαν. — ἐκρατύνηθη, *was confirmed*, i. e. in the kingdom. From the root κρατ- καρτ-, HARD, comes the intr. form κρατέω, *to be strong*, and the trans. in -υνω, *to strengthen*. Such derivatives form only the *first* aorists and perf.—forms which belong to a comparatively recent period in the history of the language. The Aor. and Fut. 2, which belong to the primitive verbs, commemorate the time when the Gr. like the oriental languages had only these two tenses, and the root of the verb was monosyllabic, consisting of a single vowel, or a consonant and vowel, as ἄ-ον; τί-ον, or at most dissyllabic, as θάν-ον, reckoning the consonant as a syllabic element. — ἐκ . . . χρηστηρίου, *by the oracle at Delphi*. The learner will observe that the prepositional phrase between the article and its subj. (so common in Gr.) has the force of a compound adj.;—it is a *qualifying* phrase, as here, *the Delphic oracle*. — 2. ὡς γὰρ δὴ, *for when now*; taking *now* in its illative sense, it comes near the sense of δὴ, meaning here, *as you would naturally expect from what has been said*. — δειδὼν . . . πάθος, *made to themselves the loss of Candaules a matter of violent indignation*, i. e. were enraged at it. Construe δειδὼν as attributive pred. of πάθος. — 4. συνέβησαν . . . Λυδοί, *both the partisans of Gyges and the rest of the (λοιποὶ) Lydians came together to the same thing*, i. e. came to agreement. — 5. ἦν μὲν δὴ, *namely, if on the one hand*. “The intention of δὴ in this passage seems to be to mark distinctly the terms of agreement.” T. — ἀνέλη, a. 2. fr. ἀναιρέω, lit. *to take up*; secondarily, *to give response as an oracle, authoritatively, = to appoint, or ordain*. — 9. ὡς . . . Γυγέω, *that, for the Heraclidæ, retribution shall come upon the fifth in descent from Gyges*. The dat. Ἡρακ. would be construed by most grammarians as dependent on ἤξει. It is rather, however, the limiter of the noun τίσις. S. § 197. ἐς . . . π. ἀπ. must not be rendered *in the fifth generation*; the acc. after ἐς denotes the object *towards* or *upon* which the action of the verb is directed. The prep. also expresses *motion* of itself, εἰς part. of εἶμι, *to go*. — 10. ἔπειος, I. uncontracted, depends

on λόγον. ἔπος is a saying having completeness, as here the *response*; hence our use of *epic sc. poem* = τὸ ἔπος. — 11. λόγον . . . ἐποιεῦντο, *made no account of*.

14.—2. ἀπελόμενοι, fr. ἀφαιρέω, *having taken (it) from the Heraclidæ*; —double acc. obj. Observe also the force of the Mid. voc. — 4. ὅσα . . . Δελφοῖσι. The sense seems to be, that of all the offerings of silver at Delphi, those consecrated by Gyges constitute the largest part. If this be correct, then join ὅσα with ἀναθ., connect ἐν to ἐστὶ (separating οἱ πλ. by commas), and supply ἔστι as the copula between πλεῖστα and οἱ, and it would read literally, *whatever offerings of silver are at Delphi, most (of them) are his*. — 6. ἄλλον . . . ἐστὶ, *both other (sc. χρυσόν, i. e. other articles made of gold) and that of which (τοῦ) it is specially worthy to have mention*. — 7. οἱ, pro. dat. limiting κρητῆρες, which belonged to him. — ἀριθμόν, acc. spec. *in number*. — ἀνακέαται, I. for ἀνακείνται. — 9. χρεωμένῳ, I. for χραομ-, *to one using, etc.* K. § 284. (10.) (a). C. § 410. — οὐ . . . Ἡετίωνος, *this is not the treasury of the commonwealth of the Corinthians, but of Cypselus son of Eetion*. — 12. τῶν, rel. gen. by attraction. K. § 332. 6. — ἴδμεν is referred to οἶδα, the plur. 1st pers. of which would be οἶδαμεν, instead of which the Att. generally has ἴσμεν, and the I. always ἴδμεν. See B. § 109. iii. — ἐς . . . ἀνέθηκε is an instance of the *constructio pregnans*. We cannot translate ἐς Δ., *at Delphi*. (See note, cap. 13. l. 9.) The verb ἀνέ- expresses only the act of *consecrating* the offerings. The act of bringing them to *Delphi* is necessarily implied. The fact of *motion* is indeed expressed both by the case form (acc.) and the prep. ἐς, and we might (why should we not say *ought to?*) fall back on the literal sense of εἰς as part. referring to the subject of the verb, and render, *going to Delphi he consecrated*. This view of it fully explicates (and it may stand as a general instance) this peculiar construction. — 14. ἐς . . . ἐδίκαζε, *on which sitting he was accustomed to dispense justice*. Observe the force of the Impf. tense; also, how προ, in the compound, carries with it its primitive *local* sense. The seat of justice was set *forth* in some public place, in front of the palace, at the gates, in the forum, etc. — 15. ἀξιοθέητον, from ἄξιος and θέομαι, *worthy of admiration*. — 18. Γυγάδας is adj. masc. Sc. θησαυρός. — ἐπὶ governs the gen. τοῦ ἀνα-, *after the one having dedicated it*; and ἐπωνυμίην is acc. absolute. Cf. Ἀθηναίης ἐπίκλησιν Ἀσσησίης, cap. 19,—a common construction of these words, as also of the monopt. ἐπίκλην. It may have arisen by ellipsis of ἔχω. — ἐσέβαλε . . . στρατιήν is highly forcible—*hurled an army against*. The transition here is abrupt, and the expression ἐπεὶ τε ἦρξε, *and when he was established in power*, almost harsh. — 21. ἀλλ' . . . γάρ,



*sed enim.* γὰρ connects a parenthetical clause showing the reason of the ἀλλὰ, which connects the next clause, τοῦτον μὲν, but this one indeed we will pass by, having mentioned such things, for no other great work, etc. and we will make mention of Ardys, etc. — 22. δυῶν . . . ἔτεα, forty years lacking two; duo de quadraginta. C. § 140. K. § 99. 4. B. § 70. 3. n. 1.

15.—The first sentence of this section is in close grammatical connection with the preceding, by the correlatives μὲν and δέ. The division is therefore harsh, but to make it (as some) after ποιήσομαι is no better; and the introduction of the new *subject* here may justify that which is sanctioned by the best editors. — 2. Πριηνέας, acc. plur. of Πριηνεύς, the Prienenses. Cf. c. 161. and b. 6. c. 8, where it can be taken only to mean the people; also c. 27. Suidas gives both Πριηνεύς and -ήνη as the name of the city; but adds, that the former of these terms is derived from the latter. The plurals as names of places, of which the ancients had such facility, must have been originally *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, or *Patronymics*,—a form which accords beautifully with their vivacity of conception; to go, for instance, to the Delphians, instead of to a place called Delphi; as if they would see the people rather than the walls. — 3. ἐπί. See on c. 5. l. 16. — 4. Κιμμέριοι. See Remarks on c. 6. — ἠθέων; the orthog. ἦθος is I. and epic, = ἔθος; cf. ἔθω, ἔθνος, and ἔδος, ἔζομαι. — Νομάδων. So called fr. νομός, rather because they lived by pasturage, than (as Lidd. & Scott) that they roamed about like cattle. — 5. ἐξαναστάντες. This compound, like the simple ἴστημι, has in some tenses a trans. in others an intrans. s. In the trans. s. to make (others) get up and out of a place = expel; in the intrans. as here (aor. 2.), to get up and out of a place, may be voluntarily = to emigrate, or by compulsion, as here, ὑπὸ Σ. = driven out by the Scythians. — ἀπικέατο, I. for ἀφίκοντο.

16.—2. ἐξεδέξατο fr. ἐκ and δέχομαι, to receive, TAKE. — 4. Δηϊόκω, gen. 1st dec. Dejoces or Deïoces. — 5. ἐξήλασε fr. ἐξελαύνω. — 6. τὴν . . . κτισθεῖσαν, the one founded from Colophon, that is, by emigrants from Colophon. — 7. ἀπὸ . . . ἀπήλλαξε, from these (wars), however, he did not come off as he wished. ἀπήλλ-, lit. turn away to something else, fr. ἀπὸ and ἄλλος. — 8. ἀπεδέξατο fr. ἀποδείκνυμι, to show off, exhibit. — 9. τάδε refers to what follows.

*Synopsis of the Reigns mentioned in this Chapter.*

1. Ardys,	. . . . .	49 years.
2. Sadyattes, son of Ardys,	. . . . .	12 “
3. Alyattes,	“ “ Sadyattes, succeeded.	

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

*difficulty.* — 15. περιδέειν, lit. *to look round*, as expressive of *unconcern*, hence, *to neglect*; also, *to permit, suffer.* — 16. ὑπέδεκετο, I. for ὑπέδεχτο, lit. *undertook*; i. e. *promised.* — 17. καὶ . . . ἀναχωρῆσαι. The clause between these two words is parenthetical—*and they retired, etc.—for pleasure came to them, etc.* — 19. ἐνδύντα, lit. *going into*; we say, *putting on.* — 21. νόμον τ. ὄρθ. “The Orthian strain was so called from being performed in a high key, the voice of the performer being raised and clear, as Baehr explains, who refers to Bloomfield *Æsch. Pers. Gloss. v. 395.* It appears to have been particularly intended for the flute or cithara, and to have been played in quick time.” T. — 23. ὡς εἶχε, sc. ἐωυτόν, *as he was.* B. § 150. m. 39. C. § 555. (a.) — 24. ὑπολαβόντα. Mark the appropriateness of the ὑπο in the comp. as also of ἀπο, a few words below. — 25. ἐξενεῖκαι, attributed as aor. 1. to ἐκφέρω. — 26. ἀπηγέεσθαι, lit. *to lead off*, hence *to relate*; so ἐξηγ— a remarkable instance of which occurs in Eurip. *Med. 744*, where Medea has demanded of Ægeus to swear to her; and he consenting, would ask her in the name of what gods she would have him swear, he says ἐξηγοῦ θεούς, *lead out your gods*, i. e. *name them.* — 27. ὑπὸ ἀπιστίας, *under suspicion*: διὰ c. acc. would imply deliberation and decision for cause; ὑπὸ c. gen. (as the gen. of the agent) indicates that the act is rather *compelled* by his suspicion. — 28. μετιέντα fr. μετ-, I. for μεθίημι, *permit to go.* — ἀνακῶς . . . πορθμέων. K. § 274. 3. (b.) C. § 372. γ. — 30. φαμένων, *pretending*, i. e. *saying* when the *say* is not founded in truth—a common sense of this word. — 31. εἴη . . . λίποιεν. Mark the force of the opt. B. § 139. 2, *that he should be safe*, i. e. one should suppose such to be the case, which however they do not positively affirm. — περὶ Ἴτ., *wandering about Italy.* — 32. ἐπιφανῆναι, 2. a. pass. *appeared.* — 33. ἔχων, as above, l. 23, reflexive. The use of this verb is quite various and peculiar, and sometimes idiomatic; as just below, οὐκ ἔχειν, followed by an infin. *not to have to do a thing*; i. e. *not to have it in one's power, to be able, or to know how.* K. 306. 1. c. So the Lat. *habeo dicere, affirmare, etc.*

---

25–27.—From Arion, Hdt. returns abruptly to the thread of the history. Alyattes reigned fifty-seven years, and was succeeded by Cræsus, who subdued the Hellenes on the continent of Asia, and was dissuaded from attempting a naval expedition against the islands of the Ægean by an artful representation of Pittacus.

28.—1. κατεστραμμένων fr. καταστρέφω, *subdued.* — 2. ἐντὸς Ἄ. i. e. on the *hither side of the Halys.* — 4. εἶχε κατ-. C. § 637. K. § 310 4. (k.) B. § 144. n. 18.

29.—1. *προσεπικτωμένου Κρ. Λυ.* The middle voice here shows that while Cræsus made the *acquisitions as accessions to the Lydians*, he acted with a view to *self* as an ambitious monarch. — 2. *ἀκμαζούσας* (cf. rad. *ἀκμή*, *acme*) expresses not merely that Sardis was flourishing, but that it was then *at its greatest height of prosperity in respect of riches*. — 3. *ἄλλοι... πάντες*. This phrase seemed to Valckner so inapt that he conjectures *ἐπιφανέες* for *οἱ π.* but without support from Mss. In some, *τε* is wanting, but evidently by error. It is demanded by the correlative *καὶ*—*both all the other... and particularly* (see c. 1. l. 7) *Solon*. — 4. *σοφισταί*, *wise men*. This term had not yet acquired the contempt which the school of the *Sophists* subsequently gave it. — 5. *χρόνον*. C. § 439. n. Though the grammars say the cases were interchanged, the Grecian mind doubtless always discriminated; and here, though we may render, *at that time*, the acc. denotes the run of a considerable *period*; the gen. denotes more precisely the idea of a *point* of time. — *ἐτύγχανον ἔδντες*. B. § 144. 5. n. 6. K. § 310. 4. (l.) S. 222. n. 2. — 6. *κελεύσασι*, a. 1. part. agreeing with Ἄθ. which together with the acc. *νόμ.* is obj. of *ποιήσας*. — *ἀπεδήμησε* fr. *ἀπὸ* and *δήμος* (cf. *δόμος*, *house*; *δέμω*, *to build*; *δέω*, *δέμας*, *δαμάω*, *δάμαρ*, *a wife*), *went away from home*. — 7. *κατὰ... πρόφασιν*, *under pretence of observation*; to which is opposed *δή*, *truly*; *but in fact*. — 8. *τινα τ. νόμ.*, partitive construction. — *τῶν*, rel. gen. by attraction. — 9. *αὐτοὶ... ἦσαν*, *for they themselves (the Athen.) were not competent*. The common distinction between *οἴός τε*, and *δυνατός*, is that the former expresses *moral* and the latter *physical* ability. — 10. *κατείχοντο*, mid. voc.

30.—1. *αὐτῶν* and *θεωρήσας* depend on *εἵνεκεν*. — *δὴ ὧν*, *now therefore*, i. e. in accordance with the arrangement previously stated. — 2. *ἐς... παρά*. Mark the difference in the use of these prepositions. (V. u. c. 24. l. 2.) — 3. *καὶ δὴ καί*, because Sardis was the place he was particularly interested to introduce. — 4. *βασιληῖοισι*, I. for *βασιλείοις*, prop. adj.—sc. *δόμοις*, *palace*. — 5. *θηησάμενον* fr. *θηέομαι*, I. form of *θεάομαι*. — *ὡς... ἦν*, *when there was to him (οἱ, i. e. Cræsus) a proper occasion*. (*κατὰ κ.*, *on occasion*, idiomatic.) — 6. *ὡς φιλοσοφέων*, *how that being a philosopher*. — 7. *ἐπελήλυθας* fr. *ἐπέρχομαι*, old perf. with Attic reduplication. B. § 85. and 114. K. § 124. (b.) C. § 191. 2. A. p. 270. — 8. *ἐπείρεσθαι*, I. for *ἐπέρ-*. — *εἴ τινα* = *quemcunque*, *whomsoever*. — *ὀλβιώτατον* is predicative to *τίνα*. The sentence gets its great conciseness (not inelegant) by ellipsis of the copula, whereby two clauses are condensed into one, and might be rendered fully, *whom of all you have seen hitherto (do you judge to be) most happy?* — 9. *ὀλβιώτατος* has *αὐτὸς* understood, subject of *εἶναι*. — 10. *ἐπειρώτα*. The

diphthong *ει* is not to be considered the form of the aug. but the Ion. orthography *ειρω-* for *ἔρωτάω*. — 16. *τῷ ἐόντι*, *the simple fact*; lit. *the thing that is*; as Gulliver makes the Lilliputs, for want of such a word in their language as *lie*, use the phrase, *the thing that is not*. — 17. *τὸ λεχθέν*, *the thing said*. In such phrases the art. is demonstrative subj. to which the part. is predicate: *the said* = *that which was said*. — 18. *ἐπιστροφέως*. An ancient Ms. has *ἐπιστροφέως*, which is more conformable to analogy, using the stem-syllable of the pret. The Gr. has a facility in making adverbs from participles, which we cannot imitate. The compactness of the expression, bodying forth the *action* of the king, forcibly expresses, not so much earnestness (as is generally interpreted), as surprise mingled with rebuke and a sense of authority; as if he would say: Look well to your words—remember you speak to a king who believes himself incomparable and who is accustomed to hear no less. — *Κοίη*, I. for *ποίη*, sc. *ὀδῶ*, and by ellipsis the adj. becomes adv. B. § 115. 4. — 19. *τοῦτο μὲν . . . τοῦτο δέ*, *on the one hand—and on the other*. The construction of the demon. is that of the acc. spec. *this indeed—and this*. C. § 490. and 441. B. § 128. n. 5. K. § 322. 5. (a.) — *τῆς . . . ἡκούσης*, *the city coming on well*, i. e. being prosperous. — 20. *καὶ . . . παραμείναντα*, *and to them all he saw children born and all surviving* (him). — 22. *τοῦ βίου εὖ*, *well or prosperously in respect of life*, i. e. the means of living. — *ὡς . . . ἡμῖν*, *as things (are) with us*, modestly implying that their wealth, at the best, was moderate compared with some others; which shows that Solon could act the courtier too when it did not conflict with truth. — 23. *μάχης . . . Ἐλευσῖνι*. The battle was at *Eleusis*, though the war was with the Megarians. — 26. *αὐτοῦ τῆπερ*, *on the very spot where*. — *ἔπεσε*, a. 2. fr. *πίπτω*.

31.—1. *ὡς . . . Κροῖσον*, *when now in the things* (or *by the things* τὰ K. § 278. Rem. 1.) *concerning Tellus, Solon had roused the curiosity of Cræsus*.—*προετρέψατο*, lit. *turned forward*, i. e. *incited*.—*ὁ* and *τόν*, the article of renewed mention = *the aforesaid*. — 3. *τίνα . . . ἴδοι*, *whom second after him he may have seen*, seems tautological; but we say *next after him*, and *second to him*. — *πάγχυ*, I. = *πάνυ*, *by all means, certainly*. — 4. *οἴσεσθαι*. Mark the force of the mid. voc. *to be about to obtain for himself*. — 5. *γένος*, acc. spec. — *βίος*, as in c. 30. l. 22, *means of living*. — 6. *ὑπῆν*, lit. *was under*, i. e. *in their entire power and control*, expresses more than *ἦν*, which would signify simply possession. — *ἀεθλοφόροι*, I. for *ἀθλ-*, *prize-bearers*, i. e. *victors in the public games*, which was an honor next to that of gaining a battle for one's country. — 8. *τῇ Ἡρῇ τοῖσι Ἄρ.* Both these datt. are predicative to *ὄρτης*; the former by the copula *εἰούσης* making it the dat. poss. (C.

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

in some way refers or appeals the matter in question to the person addressed; as, *to you*, sir, I appeal; *to your* judgment I submit it; *to you* (i. e. in your estimation) it is so, or the thing seems to be so. In this place, then, it is not dat. agt. after the pass. verb,—‘thrown away *by you*’—but, *in your estimation* (for *you*) *my happiness is cast away for nothing*. — 4. ἀξίους, *of-as-much-account-as*; like *tantum*; *so much*, implying *not more*; hence, *only*. — 8. ἐς . . . προτίθημι. For ἐς, see note, c. 31. l. 27. The idea of *at* is expressed by the acc. ending, as denoting the object on which, or the point where, the action terminates; and thus having the idea of *so far* (as in *tantum*), that of *no farther* is implied. It may be rendered, then, strictly—*going on* (i. e. counting up) *to seventy years* (there) *I fix the limit* (οὐρον, I. for ὄρον) *of life to man*; i. e. *the life* which by constitution of nature pertains to *man*,—the relation of the dat. ἀνθ-. — 11. ἐμβολίμου fr. ἐν and βάλλω, *intercalary*,—*no intercalary month reckoned*. — 12. τοῦτερον for τὸ ἕτερον, *the other*, and as above, by implication, *the one, not*: so we, by the single term, *every other*, express the alternation—*if any one shall wish the other of the years* (i. e. every other year) *to be made longer by a month*. — 13. ἵνα δὴ, *in order that thereby*. — 15. παρὰ τὰ . . . ἔτεα. The various uses of παρὰ is a great philological study. From the original meaning, *side of*, juxtaposition (V. n. c. 24. l. 2), how do we arrive at that of separation? Months that *lie by the side of the year*, are not included in it; hence *besides*, i. e. *apart from*. — 16. χίλιαι is plu. to agree with ἡμέραι, though we say, *one thousand days*. The Greek is the pure adjective construction. Our word *thousand*, like *hundred*, and *dozen*, and *few*, is strictly a collective noun in partitive construction by ellipsis of the preposition; e. g. *a dozen of soldiers*. This is made evident by joining an adj. with the latter noun, as: *a few of the same sort*. In this view, the *anomaly*, as our grammarians have called it, disappears. So the Latin *mille passuum*, *a thousand of paces*; from which, because *mille*, though a neut. adj., has acquired its substantive character, we are able to say *a mile*. — 21. πᾶν . . . συμφορῇ, *man is altogether a chance*; i. e. his life is composed of *accidents*—occurrences which he neither appoints nor foresees. There is no reason that συμφορῇ should not be taken in its *generic* sense, though when you descend to the *species* it is used only in the unfavorable sense, as also the adj. συμφορός; quite the opposite of our *luck*, and *lucky*; *hap*, and *happy*. — ἐμοί, dependent on φαίνεαι. — 22. δέ, disj. *but*. — καὶ . . . καί, corr. *both—and*. — φαίνεαι, I. for φαίνη, of which, however, the full form would be φαίνεσαι. — βασιλεύς, subj. pred. of εἶναι. — 23. ἐκείνο . . . με, *but this which you ask me*. — εἶρο, I. uncont. = εἶρου. — οὐκω, I. for οὐπω, *not yet*. — 24. τελευτήσαντα (sc. σε) καλῶς, *having completed*

*happily, τὸν αἰῶνα, your term of life,—allotted period of existence. Cf. Lat. aevum; Heb. עוֹלָם. See Meth. Qr. Rev. Apr. 1850, p. 272.) — πύθωμαι, a. 2. subj. properly means to learn by inquiry, and information. — 25. τοὶ (v. supra, l. 3) elegantly softens the rigor of the remark by deferring delicately to Cræsus' own sentiments. — τοῦ . . . ἔχοντος, than the one having (sc. wealth, or all good things, πάντα καλὰ) for a day. — μᾶλλον . . . ὀλβιώτερος. The pleonasm, common in Greek, is a relic of that early simplicity which disappears before a refined criticism. B. § 123. n. 8. C. § 460. (a.) K. § 239. Rem. 1. — 26. ἐπίσποιτο fr. ἐπέπω, I. for ἐφέπω. — 27. ἔχοντα, though having for its subj. the same person as οἱ, and might be put in the dat. to agree with it, is attracted to the acc. by reason of the inf. preferring that case for its subject. See c. 3. l. 6. — 28. ζάπλουτοι fr. πλ- and ζα an inseparable particle, intensive, perhaps a variation of διά. — 29. ἔχοντες, sc. ἑαυτούς. — βίου, dependent on μετρίως, in moderate circumstances. — ὁ μὲν δὴ . . . μούνοισι, the one indeed (δή, as you will perceive on reflection) who is very rich but unhappy, has advantage of the fortunate one (one favored of fortune or, as we would say, providence) in two things only. — 30. οὗτος δέ, sc. προέχει. — 31. ὁ μὲν (sc. ἐστὶ) δυνατώτερος, the former is better able to gratify desire, etc. — 37. οὗτος . . . ἐστι, he is the one (ἐκεῖνος, pred. of οὗτος) whom you seek, worthy to be called happy. ὀλβιος, as denoting stable and real happiness, is throughout this passage opposed to εὐτυχής, fortunate; prosperous, but subject to the caprices of fortune. — 38. ἐπισχέειν, to hold on, i. e. to restrain one's self. Supply χρή, it behooves us to refrain and not to call, etc. — 39. κω, I. for πω. — 40. ὥσπερ . . . παρέχουσα, since no country suffices, producing all things for itself, i. e. is capable of producing, etc.—the participle complementary, instead of which the inf. is sometimes used. — 41. ἀλλὰ is the conj. and χώρα understood is subj. of ἔχει. — 42. ἢ δὲ ἄν, sc. χώρα. — 43. ἀνθρώπου σῶμα ἓν, lit. the body of a man (being) one, i. e. any single person. The numeral serves the better to individualize the subject. C. § 462. γ; but the limitation which he puts, of the Superlative, is narrow. That is one species of limitation. That of the negative, as here, is another. Ascending from these, we find the generic term exclusives which embraces them both. The part. as copula is sometimes expressed, as quoted by C. ibid. — 44. αὐταρκες fr. αὐτός, self, and ἀρκέω, to suffice. — 45. διατελέη, shall continue, lit. go through to the end. — 46. οὗτος . . . φέρεσθαι, he is the one, in my judgment, entitled to wear this name. The construction οὗτος . . . δίκαιός ἐ. φ. is, according to the grammarians, for δίκαιόν ἐστι, τοῦτον φέρεσθαι. M. § 296. Rather it is the genius of the language, which seeks to make the subject of discourse the grammatical subj. of the sentence, and intends qualifying*



words rather upon the subj. than the predicate. Hence the frequent use of the adj. where we use the adv. So also the Latin; e. g. tecum obeam *libens*. Hor. Car. iii. 9. In Eng. this construction marks the poetic diction. — 48. κῆ, I. for πῆ = πῆ ὀδῶ. — 49. ὑποδέξας fr. ὑπό, which in composition has a diminutive force, and δείκνυμι,—for to many, as is known, the divinity, having-vouchsafed-a-glimpse-of happiness.

REMARK—This celebrated visit of Solon to Croesus—the greatest philosopher and lawgiver to the richest king of the age—has troubled commentators more than any other passage in Herodotus.

(1.) In computing the number of days in the life of man, the several numbers he gives, though consistent with each other, are irreconcilable with the calendar.

Thus, 70 years of 12 months of 30 days each	=	25200 days.
Intercalate 35 “ “ “ “	=	1050 “
Aggregate, as in the text,	.	26250 “

But this makes the years average 375 days each, which is inadmissible. To reconcile the discrepancy, conjecture has exhausted its resources in vain. The boldest, and one seeming in its first step plausible, is that of Wyttenbach, who proposed to read τοῦκτον in the place of τοῦτερον, making the intercalations every *sixth*, instead of *every other* year, as the five deficient days in each year make a month of thirty days in six years. But then, to correspond to this, all the succeeding numbers must be changed—which, as a conjectural emendation, having no support from Mss. or earlier Edd. is too violent to receive the assent of the learned. The curious reader will find a collection of the principal efforts of the critics in *Schw. adnot. in loc.* And, after all, the most general conclusion has been, to charge upon the text great corruption in this place—and yet the Mss. give no suspicion of such corruption—or upon Herodotus great carelessness, or egregious ignorance. I submit that the error is rather with the critics, who would make Solon talk like a mathematician *lecturing* on astronomy, instead of a philosopher in *conversation*, seeking only to illustrate a moral maxim by such a general view of certain facts as did not require exactitude of numbers; and to have sought that exactitude by stopping to compute, in the midst of such a conversation in such a presence, would have been the greatest blunder he could commit—a conventional absurdity. And even if Solon had chosen to make himself ridiculous by thus descending from the philosopher to the pedant, Herodotus had too much good taste to mar the elegance of his narrative by copying his example. He took such round numbers, approximately correct, as that he could give the sum at a thought without interrupting the conversation. The gist

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

should have been with the youthful prince, vain of the immense wealth which his aged sire already put at his free disposal, while as yet he was less burdened with the cares of government, and his judgment less chastened by experience. Schultz, again, and others, make Cræsus to have come to the throne as early as 571 B. C. After all, whether we can satisfy ourselves of the precise dates or not, I think most readers will *feel* what Plutarch (for the doubt is ancient) expresses so candidly and so judiciously, in his life of Solon:—"As for his interview with Cræsus, some pretend to prove from chronology that it is fictitious. But since the story is so famous and so well attested, nay, what is more, so agreeable to Solon's character, so worthy of his wisdom and greatness of soul, I cannot prevail with myself to reject it for the sake of what are called chronological canons, which thousands are correcting to this day, without being able to bring them to any certainty." To this reflection of Plutarch we may add, that the interval of about one century between Solon and Herodotus would hardly give time for a story purely fictitious to have become "so famous and so well attested."

To me, the earlier date (571) of the reign of Cræsus seems the more probable. The data on which this opinion rests are these:—Plutarch (in *Aristid.*) says that Aristides was made archon the year after the battle of Marathon, and that his name is on the record next after Phænix. By this, the date of the battle is fixed in the third year of the 72d Olympiad, B. C. 490.

Darius died about four years after the battle, B. C. 485. (*Hdt.* vii. 1.) Reckoning back from this date, we get 73 years and 1 month to the beginning of Cyrus' reign. Thus,

Darius reigned ( <i>Hdt.</i> vii. 4)	. . . . .	36 years.
Smerdis " ( " iii. 68)	. . . . .	8 mo.
Cambyses " ( " iii. 66)	. . . . .	7 " 5 "
Cyrus " ( " i. 214)	. . . . .	29 "
Total . . . . .	. . . . .	<hr/> 73 years. 1 mo.

to which add the 485, and we have B. C. 559 for the first of Cyrus' reign. Thus far, facts; and the ancient historians agree in representing his Lydian war as the first great exploit of Cyrus after he came to the throne. The fall of Sardis, therefore, must be placed in the early part of his reign, but precisely in what year is nowhere mentioned. The earliest year assumed is the second of Cyrus, B. C. 557; the latest, B. C. 542; the one commonly received, 546; and on this *conjecture* hangs the chronology of Lydia; for the figures in the Oxford (or Parian) Marbles, which, if originally correct, would be our guide here, are

defaced; and editors and critics differ in their attempts to restore them. Taking the earliest date, we have the following

CANON OF LYDIAN CHRONOLOGY.

1st Dynasty ;	Atyadæ, fabulous.			B. C.
2d do. ;	Heraclidæ,	505 years (Hdt. i. 7.)	.	1232
3d do. ;	Mermnadæ ;			
	1. Gyges,	38 " (Hdt. i. 14)	.	727
	2. Ardys,	49 " ( " i. 16)	.	689
	3. Sadyattes,	12 " ( " i. 16)	.	640
	4. Alyattes,	57 " ( " i. 25)	.	628
	5. Cræsus,	14 " ( " i. 86)	.	571
	(Pisistratus' usurpation, 560 ;			
	after which a few years Solon died.)			
	Sardis captured	.	.	557

These dates, which, independent of any fondness which "would fain find historical truth in a delightful story," seem to me the most probable, leave no objection to the narrative on the ground of chronology.

33-72.—SUMMARY.—This interval is occupied in part (c. 34-45) with minor details of the history of Cræsus ;—c. 46-55, the increasing power and the bearing of Persia induce him to seek the alliance of the Greeks, and to court the Grecian oracles.—c. 56. The Lacedæmonians, descendants of the Hellenes, the most distinguished of the Doric stock ; the Athenians, from the Pelasgi, the chief of the Ionians.—c. 57. The Pelasgi, distinct from the Hellenes.—c. 59-64. Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.—c. 65-68. Lycurgus and the Spartans, and the wonderful story of the bones of Orestes.—c. 69-72. The alliance of the Lacedæmonians with Cræsus effected.

73.—2. τῶνδε εἴνεκα, on account of these things ; which are specified in the two following sentences, καὶ . . . , καὶ . . .—γῆς ἰμέρω, through desire of territory. The clause following is only an amplification of the same idea. — 3. τῷ χρηστηρίῳ. He had received an oracle from the Pythia, threatening danger when a mule should become king of the Medes (supra, c. 55), which was afterwards interpreted (infra, c. 91) to mean Cyrus, the offspring of a Median mother of royal birth, and of a Persian father of mean extraction. — 4. τίσασθαι ὑπέρ, to avenge himself (Mid. voc.) upon. — Ἀστυάγω, sc. υἱόν. Ctesias, who passed his life at the Persian court, and composed a history of Assyria, wrote this name Ἀστυῖγᾶς. Diodorus wrote Ἀσπάδας, though quoting Ctesias. The Greeks generally agree with Hdt. in the form Ἀστυάγης. — 6. γαμβρόν, a word of about as indefinite meaning as our cousin, but, unlike that, denotes only relations by marriage,—affinis ; fr. γαμέω. It signifies here, as appears from the narrative, brother-in-law. — 7. καταστρεψάμενος εἶχε. This auxiliary form differs from the simple in fixing

the emphasis on the continuative state of the action or its effect *having subdued* him, *he held* him so; which we express as concisely by making the part. attributive to the obj. instead of the subj.—*he had* him *subdued*. K. § 310. κ. C. § 637. B. § 144. n. 18. — 8. ὑπεξῆλθε, *went out secretly*. Mark the force of ὑπό, *under cover*. — 11. περιεῖπε εὖ, *entreated well*. This phrase must have signified primarily the using of *conciliatory* efforts, like our *to talk around one kindly*. — 12. περὶ πολλοῦ, sc. λόγου, *of much account*; cf. § 4. l. 10. Vig. Idd. 9. 7. 3. — 14. τόξων. The *bow and arrow* (and more seldom the sling) have universally been the weapons in use by tribes rising to the first grade above the savage state. The Scyths and Parthians excelled in the use of the bow, as the Greek and Latin writers frequently testify; and our North American Indians are famed for the same art. — 16. κοτε, I. for ποτε, *once, at a certain time*. — 18. διέδεξε, I. for διόδειξε, lit. *showed through*, i. e. *showed out completely*. — ὀργὴν ἄκρος, *extreme in his temper*. ὀρ- fr. ὀρέγω seems to denote *impulse of feeling*. — τρηχέως . . . ἀεικείη, an accumulation of strong terms certainly for Hdt. *roughly exceedingly he treated* (them) *with insult*. τρηχ-, I. for τραχέως, and ἀεικείη fr. α priv. and εἶκος—*insolentia*, retains its full form only in the Ion. In Att. cont. to αἰκία. — 19. παθόντες . . . πεπονθ-. The aor. marks the act as past, while the perf. denotes the continuance of its effects:—*having suffered these things from Cyaxares*, and considering themselves still in disgrace, *as having* (i. e. by reason of having) *suffered things unworthy of themselves*. — 20. ἐβουλεύσαντο. Some Mss. have ἐβούλευσαν, which Schw. and Gais. edit, against the authority of Wess. Examples of both constructions are found. — 22. ἐώθεσαν, perf. 2, referred to ἔθω; but the present is found only in the part. ἔθων (Il. 9. 540) and ἔθοντες (Id. 16. 260.) If we suppose ἐθόω, the Doric ἔθωκα would be regular except the augment, and the perf. 2, by transposition of θ and ω, would give the Ion. ἔωθα and Att. εἴωθα. — 23. ἄργην by met. for the products of the chase—*venison*. — 26. κρεῶν, gen. parti.

74.—1. οὐ . . . ἐξεδίδου, *for Alyattes of course did not surrender*, etc. The conclusion *of course* (δὴ) follows from the law of nations, as acknowledged by the ancients, respecting suppliants. The *ικέτης* (lit. *comer* fr. ἴκω) was one who, having committed a crime, fled to some prince for protection, where, confessing his fault, and performing certain expiatory sacrifices, his person was thenceforth held sacred as that of a guest. — 5. ἐν δέ. Wytt. supplies the ellipsis here by τοῖς πέντε ἔτεσι τούτοις, which will not do, for immediately below the occurrence is said to have taken place τῷ ἑκτῷ ἔτει. Schw. sup. ταύταις ταῖς μάχαις, which lies in the same difficulty, or ταῖς ἄλλαις μάχαις, which

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

it not justly; for that if he had counseled wisely he would have sent his messengers again (and messengers on such a mission went not empty-handed) to inquire—*whose kingdom*.

REMARK—The eclipse predicted by Thales modern savans have eagerly sought to identify, from its great importance to chronology. The following facts and opinions are gathered from Larcher. Eudemus places the eclipse in question, vaguely, *about* the 50th Ol.; Pliny, definitely, in the fourth year of the 48th Ol. and in this “he is countenanced by Father Riccioli, M. Desvignoles, and President De Brosses. There was (he adds) an eclipse on the 28th of May, in the year 4129 J. P.; but the Olympic year commencing with the summer solstice, the month of May, 4129, falls in the third year of the 48th Ol.” This cannot be the eclipse foretold by Thales, he thinks, for two reasons. (1.) Cyaxares, in whose reign it occurred, according to Hdt. died in 4120. (2.) The eclipse was visible at Sardis only a little before sunset, and not at the river Halys, where the armies were, at all. A conclusive reason, certainly. After naming several other eclipses, to reject their claim, he fixes on the one which occurred J. P. 4117, supported by the authority of Fathers Petau and Harduin, Sir John Marsham, President Bouhier, and Father Corsini. The only objection that can be made to this one is, he says, “that the shadow passed over the Euxine sea by Scythia and the Palus Mæotis. It is certain, therefore, that this eclipse could not have been central on the banks of the Halys, but must have been very considerable.” Not considerable enough, however, I judge, for our purpose. Cooley, the English editor of L. adds:—“Solar eclipses nearly total, and the shadows of which pass over a given locality, are much less frequent and afford less room for choice than the commentators on Hdt. seem to have imagined. Two eminent modern astronomers, Oltmanns and Pingré, separately retracing the eclipse alluded to by Hdt. have both arrived at the same result, in assigning it to the year 609 B. C. \* \* \* As the date of this event may be regarded as an ascertained point in chronology, the conclusion arrived at by MM. Oltmanns and Pingré is of much importance.”

---

SUMMARY.—From c. 75 to 94 Hdt. relates the retreat of Cræsus to his capital after an indecisive battle at Pteria—the capture of Sardis, and the ultimate reception of Cræsus into the confidence of Cyrus. The narrative is entwined with many interesting facts, some of which are sufficiently marvellous, and embellished with digressions, by means of which he keeps along the contemporary history of Greece. In cap. 94 he states that, in the time of Atys, the country was so sorely pressed by a famine that many of the Lydians were compelled to emigrate; that they settled among the Ὀμβρικοί, and called themselves, from the name of their leader, *Τυρσηνοί*.

The history now, following the fortune of the conqueror, passes on to the East; and that we may know who Cyrus is, the historian naturally begins at the beginning. We are thereby led at once into the antiquities of the oldest empire of the post-diluvian world. The images of Nimrod and the patriarchs, of Semiramis and Nitocris, of Babylon, and Nineveh, and Ecbatana, rise around us in their magnificence. The study of this portion of history, while it constitutes one of the most useful parts of solid learning, is invested with the charm of romance.

95.—1. Ἐπιδίζηται. The root of this word is probably the particle ζε, which indicates motion or tendency towards an object; e. g. χαμᾶζε, *ground-ward*. In the verb, the earliest form would be analogically (a. 2) ζήν, and the earliest pres. δίζημι, a form which is found only in this compound dep. ἐπιδίζημαι. A derivative ζητέω (cf. Lat. *betō* fr. *be*, βαίνω) has the same sense, *to seek*, and a cognate, ἐπιδίζω, has the cognate sense, *to doubt, to be in a state of inquiry*; the mid. voc. of which, as dep., is sometimes used in the same sense as ἐπιδίζημαι. — δή, *according to our plan*. — ἐνθεῦτεν. See remarks on Ion. Dialect, 2. c. — 2. τὸν Κῦρον . . . κατεῖλε. The complex construction of this sentence cannot be imitated in our language. The sense is, that *the inquiry now is, who this Cyrus was who destroyed the power of Cræsus*, as if the sentence were obj. of ἐπιδίζηται; but this would put the main substantive in the subordinate relation of a predicate, and that in a subordinate clause (τίς ἦν ὁ Κῦρος, ὅς . . . etc.); instead of which, the genius of the Greek language puts the subject of the discourse in the more prominent position of obj. of the leading verb, and says, *the inquiry is concerning Cyrus*, and subordinates the circumstantial question, *who and what he was; qualis fuerit*. The construction of the relative clause is also idiomatic in the mode of condensing it from a compound sentence to a simple one, by compounding the two subjects (ὅστις) and reducing one of the verbs to a participle. — 3. Πέρσας, connect with Κῦρον. — ὅτεω, I. for ὅτινι (Tab. vii. 5.) — ἠγήσαντο, *they became masters*. The force of the mid. voc. is apparent in most deponents, both Greek and Latin. — 4. οἱ. The post-positive article, according to the classification of the older grammarians, exhibits the true office of the *article* (*articulus*, ἄρθρον) *connecting* the subj. (μετεξέτεροι) with the dependent part of the sentence, and in such case is generally rendered by our demonstrative; *those not wishing to embellish the exploits or character* (τά, sc. ἔργα or χρήματα. B. § 125. 5. n. 6.) — 6. τριφασίας. Xenophon, in his Cyropædia, differs somewhat from Hdt. in the story of the birth and childhood of Cyrus; Æschylus, in his tragedy “The Persæ,” is still different; and Ctesias gives a third variation. It is probable these are the three traditions Hdt. alludes to. — 8. τῆς ἄνω Ἀσίας, *the upper Asia*. So the Greeks distinguished the more distant parts of the continent from the peninsula



which lies between the seas, which they called ἡ κάτω Ἀσίη, *the lower*, or, as we more commonly say, *the lesser*, Asia; or, with the Latins, Asia Minor. The dividing line was the river Halys. Cf. c. 163, τὴν Ἄλυος ποταμοῦ ἄνω Ἀσίην, in which construction ἄνω and κάτω answer to the Latin *ultra* and *citra*.

REMARKS.—The chronology of the eastern monarchies has claimed much attention from scholars, and it is vain to hope for a perfect resolution of all its difficulties. And this sum of 520 years, given by Hdt. as the term of the Assyrian empire, is one of the greatest obstacles to any tolerable reconciliation of discrepancies. It therefore demands our notice.

There was a revolt of the Medes, something over a century before Deïoces (see next chapter), led by the satrap Arbaces, who ascended the imperial throne and gave to Assyria a line of Median monarchs, extending (through Deïoces and his successors, as is commonly assumed) to Astyages; with whose fall under Cyrus the history of this mighty empire closes, in the year 559 B. C. Ctesias, in his τὰ Περσικά, important portions of which have been preserved in the extracts of several ancient authors, gives a list of the Assyrian kings, copied out of the archives at Babylon, from Ninus (or his father Belus) to this Astyages. From the accession of Arbaces to the fall of Astyages, he makes to be 267 years. This places Arbaces 826 B. C. From Ninus down to Arbaces the sum varies, both in the ancient authors who copied his list and figures directly and in those who took them at second hand, and in the later editions of the same author. The extreme range of the difference is from about 1300 to 1429 years. The highest number is a various reading of Africanus; the lowest is a copy further removed from the original, and probably less reliable. Another reading of Africanus is 1404. Diodorus, who, as well as the last-named author, transcribed from the original, reads variously 1360 and 1400, with the qualifying phrase *something more than*; a form of expression which gives a strong presumption that the round number 1400 is the true reading. The relative value of these dates we cannot discuss in a brief note; but let us assume Africanus' 1404, agreeing so nearly with Diodorus' "more than 1400," as probably correct. This added to 826 carries us back to 2230 B. C. as the first of that Ninus who gave his name to the capital of the empire. Ninus and Abraham were contemporary, and following the LXX, we find them a little more than 1000 years after the flood. How does Herodotus accord with this?

According to the common mode of settling his account, the 520 years is to be reckoned back from Arbaces, which therefore brings us to 1346,—a point which should be, if the language of Herodotus repre

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

the person of Cyaxares, and the two authors have continued their lists severally down through the common reigns. Hence the confusion. The facts, then, are sufficiently clear and consistent. What of the dates?

The sum of the four Median reigns is in Hdt. 150 years. We have then  $559 + 150 = 709$  B. C. for the accession of Deïoces. The next question is, whether the 53 years of Deïoces should date from the success of the revolt and the independence of his country, in which he seems to have been a leading spirit from the first, or from the time of his election to the throne. In the former case, the numbers which precede join on with those which follow this dividing line, and give continuity to the reckoning. This is like an historian, is like the care which characterizes our author. In the latter case, he throws in uncounted some odd years of the unregulated state of the country, thus making a gap which unsettles his chronology. This is unlike the historian. I assume, therefore, as the more probable, the former case, and set the column of Assyrian chronology directly above the Median. Those who think otherwise will add such number of years for the intervening period of anarchy as they judge proper, observing only that the age of Deïoces will confine them to very narrow limits.

I must next add an observation which may be put by some to the charge of temerity, seeing the Mss. and Edd. give no various readings in this place. Nevertheless, let it be judged. The "520 years" of Hdt. would be written ἑξαφ'κ'. Now, if instead of that he had written ἑτα,αφ'κ'; or ἑτη,αφ'κ',—1520 years, we have the two great authors agreeing, as follows:

CTESIAS.		HERODOTUS.	
Last of Astyages,	559 B. C.		559 B. C.
to Arbaces,	267 years.	To Deïoces,	150 years.
	—		—
From Arbaces,	826 B. C.	From Deïoces,	709 B. C.
to Ninus,	1404 years.	to Ninus,	1520 years.
	—		—
	2230 B. C.		2229 B. C.

Such agreement, chronologers are accustomed to say, sufficiently demonstrates the general correctness of the numbers.

From the elevated point we have now reached, as the learner can easily glance up through the next higher epoch and take in the compass of the earliest post-diluvian history, I add:—

That the kingdom or colony of Assyria was planted some generations previous to Ninus by Asshur (whence the name), a distinguished chief who went out from Babylon (Gen. x. 11. The prolepsis in the

name of Nineveh is common. They are not to be listened to who confound Nimrod and Ninus; nor they who sublimate proper names into abstractions, assuming, as Niebuhr in Rome, that ancient history is fable. Rather, ancient fable is history obscured.) Babylon, therefore, founded by the great-grandson of Noah, was the older city, and was the ruling power of the East till the valor of Ninus gave to Assyria that preëminence which justly ranked him as the founder of the empire. Previous to this, there flourished at Babylon, according to the ancient chronographers, two dynasties, the first commencing 225 years after the dispersion of the nations; that, I understand them to mean, consequent on the confusion of tongues; which brings us to within *about* 400 years of the flood. This gives us for Babylon the following scheme, which may be taken as approximately correct:

To the Dispersion, . . . . .	<i>about</i> 400	Post-Dil.
Dispersion to First Dynasty, . . . . .	225	
First or Chaldean Dynasty, . . . . .	225	
(or, according to some, 195)		
Second or Arabian Dynasty, . . . . .	215	
Total, . . . . .	1065	

years to Ninus and the supremacy of Assyria. Abraham was born, according to the LXX, 1072 years after the flood.

96.—1. *αὐτονόμων*, *independent*, not free republics nor in a state of anarchy. — 2. *ὠδε . . . περιῆλθον*, *thus they come round again to tyrannies*. The word *tyranny* is here used distinctively of the *usurpation*. — 3. *σοφός*, like the Lat. *prudens*, signifies endowed with talents and skill for practical, and particularly political, affairs. — 4. *ἐρασθεῖς*, w. causal gen. *enamored* (of a thing). The part. expresses the state of the subject. — 5. *ἐν τῇ . . . ἤσκει*, *in his own* (sc. town, *κώμη*) *both being formerly a tried man in respect of the administration of justice, and (now) somewhat more and more earnestly applying himself thereto, he made it his vocation*. *δικαιοσύνην* limits *δόκιμος* and *ἐπιθέμενος* as well as *ἤσκει*. This kind of *zeugma*, common in Greek and elegant for its conciseness, is not practicable in English; hence the necessity to us of supplying the relative words. — 6. *τῷ δικαίῳ*. (C. § 449. a.) — 7. *δικαστήν . . . αἰρέοντο*, *chose him their judge*; observe the force of the mid. voc. — 8. *μνεώμενος* fr. *μνάομαι*, cont. with epenthesis of *ε*; *keeping the mind on* (*τὴν ἀρχὴν*) *the supreme power*, as an object, implies the desiring and using arts to obtain it. — 9. *ἕστε . . . δικασόμενοι*. The subj. of the sentence is *οἱ demonst.*, to which *αὐτοὶ* is appositive and rendered distinctive by the particle *καὶ*—*themselves also*; i. e. *those in the other villages*, as well as those in the village of Deïoces (*ἐν τῇ*

ἑωυτοῦ). — 15. κατὰ τὸ ὀρθόν, *according to rectitude; justly.* — 17. τότε ἐπεὶ τε ἤκουσαν. These particles present another instance of the condensed elegance and force which the Greek language acquires by ellipsis. Lit. *then and when they had heard*, i. e. *then* (they heard) *and when* (or after that) *they had*, etc. The construction is frequent. Cf. c. 103 infra, καὶ πρῶτός τε ἐλόχισε, *he both* (divided into companies) *and he first* did so (i. e. he was the first to do it). Also c. 105, καὶ ἐπεὶ τε, and δὲ ἐπεὶ τε, in which cases the full expression would give, first the assertion, that *it was* so, and then the relative clause, *when it was*, etc. The explanations of Hoogeveen (Gr. Part. sub. voc. τε) and Viger (Gr. Id. c. 8. § 7) do not meet the case. — 18. τέλος. C. § 437.

97.—1. ἐπιφοιτέοντος and πυνθανομένων illustrate happily the law that the *idea* often controls the grammatical *form* of the word, as here the *number* of the collective noun. When the author speaks of a *multitude* as coming, they are viewed in *unity*; but when he speaks of their having learned certain facts, requiring individual attention, the idea of the individuals composing the multitude prevails. — 3. ἐς . . . ἀνακείμενον, *every thing depending on himself.* — 4. προκατίζων. The use of πρό here in its local sense is legitimate, as marking the fact that the seat of judgment anciently was *in front* of the palace, or more openly, in the market-place (the ἀγορά or *forum*), or, in the East, *in the gates* of the city. — 5. τῶν, sc. χρημάτων. — 9. ἐδίδοσαν . . . λόγον, *they gave to themselves talk*, i. e. *entered into conversation.* — 11. οὐ γὰρ commences what the partisans of Deïoces are supposed to have said. This intimation of the cunning of Deïoces shows sufficiently the philosopher in the narrator. He reasoned the nature of his facts as carefully as his age permits us to demand. — 12. φέρε, like the Lat. *age*, in hortitative discourse, *come.* — 14. αὐτοὶ . . . τρεψόμεθα. L. translates, *we can cultivate our fields in peace*; and remarks—“I am probably the first who has given this meaning to the phrase, of which, however, I conceive not only that it is susceptible, but that it cannot receive any other. Ἔργα signifies, all the labors of the country, ploughed fields, harvests, even the trees, as appears from Il. v. 92. \* \* This word, says Apollonius (Lex. Hom.), signifies in Homer, agriculture, when that author employs it simply and without the addition of any other word to determine the sense.” — 15. κη, I. for πη (by ellipsis of ὀδῶ. C. Tab. ¶ 63), modifies ταῦτα, giving it indefiniteness—*something like this; in some such a way.*

98.—2. πολλός, I. for πολύς. For construction, see note, c. 32. l. 46 Cf. M. § 534. — 3. ἐς ὃ, *to the degree that.* — 7. ἵνα . . . χάσης, *when*

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

fifteen feet broad and forty feet high, through which she poured the waters of a little mountain-lake, to refresh the city.

For the extent of the place, Hdt. is well supported by other ancient authors. Diod. Sic. says it was 150 stadia; Thucyd. makes Athens about 148, and Dion. Hal. 168 stadia. Hdt. writes as if he judged from personal observation; that he had seen both cities, and they were apparently about equal in extent.

The more common and now established orthography, Ecbatana, is conceded to be less correct than that of our author.

99.—7. γελᾶν . . . αἰσχρόν. ἅπανσι is doubtless to be taken in the adverbial sense, as in c. 1. The Orientals have ever been nice in their sense of decorum. Cf. what Xenophon says of the Persians (Cyroped. I. 2): Αἰσχρόν μὲν γὰρ ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἐστὶ Πέρσαις καὶ τὸ ἀποπτύειν, καὶ τὸ ἀπομύττεσθαι, καὶ τὸ φύσης μεστοῦς φαίνεσθαι· αἰσχρόν δὲ ἔτι καὶ τὸ ἰόντα που φανερόν γενέσθαι ἢ τοῦ οὐρῆσαι ἔνεκα, ἢ καὶ ἄλλα τινὸς τοιοῦτου. In India and Arabia there is the same scrupulous propriety in regard to spitting; and in this they do but express the instinctive sentiment, not of the East, but of humanity, wherever *evil communications* have not *corrupted good manners*. To spit on one has ever been held the last mark of indignity. Hence Job (xxx. 10), in his extremity of degradation, says, "They abhor me; they flee from me, and spare not to spit in my face;" where perhaps the sense is, *before me*, instead of *in my face*. The note of Barnes on this passage is sufficiently instructive to suffer a repetition here. He says:

"The Hebrew may mean, either to spit *in* the face, or, to spit *in the presence* of any one. It is quite immaterial which interpretation is adopted, since in the view of the Orientals the one was considered about the same as the other. In *their* notions of courtesy and urbanity, he commits an insult of the same kind who spits in the presence of another which he would if he spit on him. Are they not right? Should it not so be considered every where? Yet how different their views from the more refined notions of the civilized Occidentals! In America, more than in any other land, are offences of this kind frequent and gross. Of nothing do foreigners complain of us more, or with more justice; and much as we boast of our intelligence and refinement, we should gain much if in this respect we would sit down at the feet of a Bedawin Arab, and incorporate his views into our maxims of politeness."

Well to say, but, alas for our Arabs! recent travelers testify that their habits in this respect have sadly relaxed "*since they assumed the habit of smoking tobacco*;" and Niebuhr says he observed that the mas-

ter of a family had a little china spitting-pot near him. — 12. ἕτεροῖος. Not of another nature, as some interpret; but, another person, another sort of character, instead of their familiar companion. — ὀρέωσι. Part. dat. plu. to agree with σφι. Deïoces must not be supposed to be the inventor of a new policy, but only as imitating the custom of oriental monarchs.

100.—3. τὰς . . . γράφοντες, *the litigants*. The Attics used the mid. voc. — παρά. See note, c. 24. l. 2. and c. 32. l. 2. — 4. διακρίνων, DISCERNO, DISCERN. — 6. ἐκεκοσμέατο. Third pers. plur.; Ion. ending. Tab. viii. — εἴ . . . ὑβρίζοντα. 'A literal rendering of this clause: *if he should ascertain any one having violated* (the laws, that is), gives us a wrong idea, as if, assuming the act of a violation, he would say, *if he should find out who had done it*; whereas the sense is, *if he should learn that any one had done such a thing*. The Greek is of necessity ambiguous, for want of a *gerund*, whereby the *person* is made the more conspicuous and the *act* subordinate. This, however, is in accordance with the genius of the language. (Cf. c. 32. l. 46.) We are more logical, and express the different relations elegantly and concisely by a change of case in the substantive. Cf. c. 33, Μετὰ δὲ Σόλωνα οἰχόμενον, *after Solon going*. We would say, *Solon's*;—making the *act of departure* the object of the preposition. — 7. κατὰ . . . ἀδικήματος, *according to the desert of each one's offence*. — ἐδικαίειν. See Tab. II. and VIII. 3. (1.) a. — 8. κατάσκοποι . . . κατήκοι. Our word *spy* corresponds in its literal sense to the former of these words, but is extended in use so as to cover the ground of both. A spy is expected to *hear* as well as *see*. This sort of "secret police" is an essential part of the organization of despotism. Cf. c. 114 infra, ὀφθαλμὸν βασιλέως, *the king's eye*; and vii. 239, ὀδοφυλάκων, *highway-guards*. This use of κατήκοι is rare. — ἀνά. *Motion upward* from the lowest extreme reaches at length the highest; hence, *up through*; *throughout*. So of time, ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν ἡμέρην, *through the entire day*. K. § 290.

101.—1. συνέστρεψε, lit. *turned together*, as a shepherd would different flocks; so did Deïoces gather the several tribes of the Medes under his protection and bind them under one government. — 2. γένεα fr. γένος. The map exhibits the probable location of these tribes, according to Larcher. The Magi were the Priest-caste of Persia. The name, *Mogh*, is derived by oriental scholars from *mah*, signifying *great*, (cf. Lat. *magnus*), *illustrious*, or *the head*.

102.—2. τρία καὶ πενήκοντα. Ctesias assigns but 40 years to the reign of this prince, if we concede him to be the same as Artæus, in his



catalogue; and modern chronographers make it even less. The discrepancy is explained on the hypothesis that Ctesias dates from the time when the regal power was confirmed to him over all Media, and that Herodotus includes a portion of the period of anarchy, from what time the influence of Deïoces began to prevail. (See Rem. c. 95. *sub fine*, and c. 130.) — 4. ἀπεχρῆτο, *was not content*, fr. ἀπὸ and the root χρα or χρε (perhaps cognate to χείρ, the hand), representing the idea of *necessity*, something of *prime utility*, hence *wants*, which includes *desires* and *demands*; *it did not put away his desires or demands*; that is, *did not satisfy them*. — τούτοισι. The dat. is obj. of ἐπὶ in composition. — 6. Μήδων; dependent on ὑπηκόους, as gen. of inferiority. (C. § 349.) — 8. τὴν Ἀσίην, means with the Greeks, when not otherwise defined, only the upper Asia. — 9. τοὺς Ἀσσ. . . . εἶχον. The distinction is between the nation at large and the Ninevites; and instead of the simple connector καί, we should expect the complex καὶ δὴ καί. (See c. 1. l. 7. n.) — 10. τότε . . . ἀπεστεώτων, *but at that time they were forsaken* (lit. *left alone*) *of their allies, as having revolted* (lit. *stood off*, or *put themselves away*) from them; as related above, c. 95. — 11. ἄλλως . . . ἤκοντες, *being however in other respects quite prosperous*. For gen. with εἶ, see K. § 274. 3. (b.) C. § 395. Cf. also c. 32. l. 30, μετρίως . . βίου. — 12. ἐπὶ τούτους δὴ; a clause appositive to ἐπὶ Ἀσσ-, l. 9, — a repetition which a loose style often demands, and is happily indicated in Greek by δὴ; *against these, as I said*. — 14. στρατός; connect with αὐτός; *a large portion of his army with the king himself was destroyed*.

REMARK—The facts of the history are clearly irreconcilable with the supposition that Deïoces and Phraortes are in the line of the kings of Assyria. (See c. 95. Rem.)

103.—3. καὶ πρῶτός τε. See note, c. 96. l. 17. — 4. ἐλόχισε. Some Mss. have ἐλόχησε. — κατὰ τέλεα; *per cohortes*. Schw. This sense of τέλος comes from the idea of completeness; *a complement*. — τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ. Hdt. means to save his Greeks from the charge of being so late in learning the military art. — 7. οὗτος δ, *this is the one*; δ, as demonstrative and predicate. — 8. ὅτε . . . ἐγένετο. See c. 74. — σφί. C. § 410. K. § 284. (10.) — 9. δ τὴν . . . ἐνωτῶ. It would appear from this, that the power of Assyria was limited almost to its capital. ἄνω, *above*, i. e. *beyond* the river; *ultra fluvium*. The Halys was considered the boundary between the empire of the East and the Ægean provinces. Hence the designations ἡ κάτω, and ἡ ἄνω Ἀσίη. V. c. 95. l. 6. n. — 11. τιμωρέων . . . καί, *both* (for the purpose of) *avenging his father, and*, etc. — 13. οἱ and περικατημένῳ agree together; *to*

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

REMARK.—A glance at the map shows the intelligence and clear understanding of our author. The main Caucasian range extends from near the Palus Mæotis, south-east to the shores of the Caspian. The most direct and frequented route was on the southern side of the mountain, near the coast of the Euxine, through Colchis. But having missed the upper pass, the Scyths were forced to keep along the other side of the range till they reached the Albanîæ Pylæ, near the modern Derbend;—a route more circuitous and doubtless much more difficult. This same route has been traversed in modern times by the Huns, on a similar incursion, and still later by Peter the Great.

105.—1. *καὶ ἐπεὶ τε*. See *c.* 96. *l.* 17. *n.* — 4. *ἀποτρέπει . . . πορεύεσθαι*, *he turns them away from coming on further*. The English idiom, unlike the Greek, does not admit the negative with the dependent verb. The pregnant brevity of the Greek is more compendious than the Eng. The difference is here. There are two acts or objects in view,—their advancement and their halt—the one having a genitive, and the other an accusative relation to the verb; or, more analytically, the one in genitive relation with *ἀπό*, the other in accusative relation with the verb;—a point of departure and an object; *from* the one *to* the other of which he would persuade them. In Eng. whichever particle we use requires its own object; i. e. we persuade *from advancing*, or *to return*. The Greek places the particle of departure foremost, with ellipsis of its proper object, and brings in at the end the ultimate aim as acc. object; as here, *from* (advancing further) *he turns them to the not advancing further*. The Eng. gives one sentence entire, which sufficiently implies the other *ad factum*, but not *ad verbum*; the Greek gives the extremes of the two sentences with the verbal ellipsis. Cf. *c.* 2. *l.* 1, *ἐς Αἴγυπτον ἀπικέεσθαι*; also *c.* 1. *l.* 3. and note in that place; also *ἐκπηδᾶν ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν*, *c.* 24. — 5. *Συρίας*. This name was applied to the whole country from the Euphrates to Egypt and Cilicia. The Hebrews called it Aram, from the father of Nahor; whence Aramæa, a name not unknown to the Grecians. — 6. *παρεξελθόντων*, *having passed by out of* (the country). The distinctive use of the particles is never lost sight of. — 12. *έόντες*. Mark the near connection in *sense* also with the Lat. *eo, to go*. — 16. *όρᾶν*, depends on *έστι* subaud. Cf. *c.* 104. *l.* 1. and 4, *έστι . . . εἶναι*; and *c.* 24. *l.* 33, *έχειν . . . ἀρνέεσθαι*. K. § 306. 1. (c.) — 18. *ἐναρέας*. This is probably a Scythian word, and its etymology therefore not to be sought in the Greek. As to the nature of the malady, enough has been written. Without troubling the learner with the various opinions where none agree, I give the following from Larcher: “Hippocrates very clearly explains this in a passage which I shall

quote at full length, and from which we may gather both the cause and the effects of this malady. ‘Their continual exercise on horseback occasions to the Scythians acute pain in the joints; they then become lame; and if the disorder augments, the hip falls backwards. In the commencement of the malady, they cure themselves by cutting the vein which runs behind each ear. When the blood ceases to flow, they fall asleep from exhaustion; and on awaking, some are cured, and some are not.’”

He proceeds to say that this remedy is fatal to the virility of the patient, and that when he perceives his powers of manhood gone, he attributes it to the Nemesis of some offended deity. “‘They then clothe themselves in a woman’s garment, acquire the habits of women, and join them in their employments.’”

Cooley adds, on the authority of modern travelers, that among those Caucasian and steppe regions of Europe and Asia, “cases are frequent of males losing the strength and physiognomy of their sex, and assuming the dress and habits of women.”

106.—3. ὀλιγωρίας; see c. 4. l. 7. n. — χωρίς μὲν . . . χωρίς δέ. To make the antithesis more conspicuous Hdt. often adds to μὲν and δέ, the article τὸ or the demonstrative τοῦτο. (Cf. c. 30. l. 19.) On the same principle here, χωρίς, being demanded in the latter clause for its relation to φόρου, is repeated in the antecedent correlative for greater distinctiveness. *On the one hand they exacted tribute from each one (ἐκάστων is all taken distributively) as they were accustomed to impose on each; and besides the tribute, etc.* For φόρον, the principal Edd. have φόρων,—which is quite impracticable. φόρον ἔπ. is plain, but this reading gives a difficulty in the relative τό; and to relieve this, Reisk conjectured τόν, which is approved by Schw.; but this again demands ἐπέβαλον for ἐπέβαλλον;—a reading which is not indeed without the support of at least one Ms. It would read then, *they exacted the tribute which they imposed*,—a declaration hardly consistent with the style of Hdt. I prefer the reading given in the text; and understand it, that after the assertion that *they exacted tribute*, the neut. rel. introduces a general remark—*it was a thing they were accustomed to do wherever they came, to levy it.* — 9. τῶνπερ. The office of the περ is to render τῶν a little indefinite;—not to say that the identical old limits were reëstablished. — καὶ . . . τε, and in addition. — 10. ἑτέροισι λόγοισι. So c. 184 below, τῶν ἐκ τοῖσι Ασσυρίοισι λόγοισι μνήμην ποιήσομαι; but this promised Assyrian history probably perished in the embryo, like many another noble conception of noble minds. Such a work is nowhere referred to by the ancients, except it be in one place in Aristotle (Hist. Animal. viii. 18);

where he mentions *Herodotus' account of the taking of Nineveh*. He may have made some beginnings on such a history, or an essay on the siege and capture of Nineveh, which would answer the special promise made in this place. This is the more probable as it was a theme to tempt the pen that could delineate a grand historic scene. As a counterpart to the taking of Babylon, Hdt. *ought* to have given the picture to the world.

REMARKS.—This second fall of Nineveh was final. Here its history—long, eventful, cruel, glorious—finds its end. The city is buried in its own ruins, is covered literally from the eyes of mortals by the accumulated dust of ages, its very location become unknown, and its sacred tombs insulted by the foot of the wandering Arab, ignorant of the treasures enshrined beneath—a gift from antiquity to the curiosity of the nineteenth century. By the labors of Botta and Layard, the fragments of the city are exhumed. At the same time, a knowledge of the Assyrian character is recovered, and the long-buried inscriptions are deciphered, which shed new light on the history of the empire.

Nineveh was situated on the east bank of the Tigris, near its junction with the Zab. In Jonah (i. 2) it is called “that great city,” as if it was distinguished above other cities for extent; and also (iii. 3) “an exceeding great city, of three days’ journey.” A similar phrase—*Nīvos μεγάλη*—occurs in the epitaph of Sardanapalus as quoted by Diod. Sic. (ii. 23), which he says was composed in the barbarian tongue and afterwards translated by some Grecian. The same author (ii. 3) gives the extent of the city as 150 stadia in length and 90 in breadth, or about 60 miles in circuit. Strabo says (xvi. 1), “it was much larger than Babylon.” Diodorus (ut supra) says it was protected by a wall rising 100 feet above the plain, broad enough for three chariots to drive abreast on the top, and surmounted at intervals by towers, 1500 in number, which ascended to the height of 200 feet. We may abate something from these figures for the excited imagination of Diodorus, but that it had works of art—sculpture and architecture of beauty and magnificence, is attested by the recent excavations. He also depicts the corruption of morals as extreme. In S. S. besides Jonah, Zeph. (ii. 14, 15) and Ezek. (xxxii.) unite, to use the language of Kitto, “to confirm the view which has been given of the commercial greatness, the surpassing opulence, the high culture, the immense population, and the deep criminality of the city of Nineveh,” as well as “the greatness of its dominion and the grandeur of its state.” The only statistical datum from which to estimate the population of the city, is that of Jonah (iv. 11), “more than sixscore thousand persons that cannot discern between their right hand and left;” which is generally taken to mean

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

not the same nor necessarily meeting in the same person. — 13. *πρῆγμα . . . προσθέω*, *the thing which I would enjoin on you*. *προσθέω*, the subjunc. aor. 2. (See Tab. VIII. 3. (2.) a.) — 14. *μηδαμὰ παραχρήση*, *you may by no means neglect*. Two things that are in the relation expressed by *παρά*, are in close proximity (see c. 24. l. 2. n.), but individually distinct from each other. (Cf. c. 32. l. 15. n.) The former idea prevails in such words as *παραχρῆμα*, *at the very thing, or in the act*; the latter, in *παραχράομαι*, *to abuse, or fail to perform the proper duty*. — 15. *ἔωυτῶ περιπέσης*, *you would tumble upon yourself round about*; i. e. fall to ruin—a metaphor taken, as T. thinks, “from a house falling in upon itself.” — 16. *ἐς σεωυτοῦ*, sc. *οἶκημα*. — 17. *ὅτεω*. See Tab. VII. 5. — 19. *ἀνδρὶ τῶδε*; meaning himself. A courtly deference leads him to avoid the pro. personal—a usage common to all polite people. On the same principle *τὸ ἐμόν* (l. 22), = *ἐμέ*. B. § 128. n. 2.

109.—1. *τούτοισι*; dat. instrumental. — 2. *την*. Schw. with Æm. Portus would supply the ellipsis by *στολήν* or *κόσμησιν*. Others have proposed *ζημίην*. But there is not *usage* for the ellipsis of these, as of *ὁδόν*. Hdt. interprets himself well in vii. 223: *τὴν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἔξοδον ποιούμενοι*. Supplying *ὅδον*, I would take it in the adverbial sense of *manner*;—*in the way in which they were accustomed to array for execution*. — 6. *τῆ*, sc. *ὄδῳ*. — *οὐδ’ εἰ . . . μαίνεται*, *not even if he should be out of his senses and rave worse than he now raves*. — 8. *προσθήσομαι τῇ γνώμῃ*, *will accede to the purpose*; more literally, *add myself to the opinion*;—a form of expression which arose probably from their manner of dividing the assembly in ascertaining a vote; those who would sustain a measure proposed going over to one side of the house *to join themselves to the party of the mover*. Cf. Lat. *ire pedibus in sententiam*. In the British House of Commons, the practice is still continued, I believe, for one party to withdraw from the house while the other is counted. — 11. *ἔρσενος* (I. for ἄρσ-) *γόνου*. Gen. of explanation. C. § 395. — *θελήσει . . . ἀναβῆναι*. Larch. says, “*θέλω* and *ἔθελω* are frequently redundant;”—a remark quite unphilosophic. Cooley adds, “*ἔθέλειν* is here used for *μέλλειν*;”—which is hardly less so. More properly it is simply an auxiliary = *will*, which is etymologically = *βούλ-ομαι* = *vol-o*. The auxiliary system of forming the tenses, less used by the classic authors, must still have been in common colloquial use; for when learning perished from among them, and classic models ceased to influence, the people transmitted to modern Greece as a household inheritance, *ἔχω* and *θέλω* and *ἔθέλω* as essential auxiliary parts of the verb. Thus the Romaic makes a pluperfect by the help of *εἶχον* or *εἶχα*, and a future and conditional by the help of the pres-

ent of θέλω and the impf. and perf. of ἐθέλω. — 14. ἄλλο . . . μέγιστος. In such comparative sentences, the full construction would have the predicate expressed in both clauses, which however all languages agree to dispense with once. We commonly make the ellipsis in the second member; the Greek, as here, in the first. — 16. τῶν τινά, sc. δούλων.

110.—1. ἐπὶ requires the acc. Some Mss. have βουκόλον. The best Edd. agree in βουκόλων, to which we must supply τινά, or τοῦτον. — 3. ἐπιτηδεωτάτας, *most convenient* or *fit* for his purpose. The reading has been much disputed. — 4. ἐωντοῦ; i. e. Harpagus. — 6. Σπακῶ. According to Le Fevre (or Faber) as quoted by L. the Hyrcanians, a people governed by the Persians, still call a dog *Spac*. The Russians say *Sobaka* or *Sabac* for the same thing. — 7. ὑπώρραι . . . οὐρέων is tautological, but admitted to classic rank. Plains lying *at the foot of the mountains; sub radicibus montium*. — 8. οὗτος δῆ, *this one as I said*, or *the aforesaid*. — 9. βορέω . . . ἀνέμου. See c. 6. l. 4. n. — Ἀγβατάνων; gen. of origin; taking the direction *from Agbatana* as the stand-point. — 16. ἐρημότατον, sc. μέρος. — 17. τοι. See Tab. VII. 1. — 18. περιποιήση, is not exactly like our unclassical *to get around the doing* of a thing; but rather, *to do or act round* a thing, i. e. to make pretence of doing, while you avoid coming at the exact thing. — 19. σε; construe as subject of διαχρήσεσθαι. Cf. ἐχρήσατο, c. 117. l. 23.

111.—3. τῷ . . . ἡμέρην, *to whom now also himself, the wife; i. e. whose own wife also* (καὶ referring to ἐπίτεξ, connecting it with the idea of the same word in c. 108) *was daily expecting to be delivered*. Some explain the last clause to mean that she *had been in labor all day*—a sense the words will not well bear. — 4. τότε κως, *just about that time*. κως relieves the τότε from the expression of precise exactitude. — 5. φροντίδι, *anxiety*; serious and painful thought is a common sense of the word. — 9. ἐξ ἀέλπτου, *ex insperato; contrary to expectations*. — 11. τὸ has the double relation of object of ἰδεῖν and subject of γενέσθαι; *what I could wish not to have seen and never to have happened*, etc. ὄφελον is used either alone or in connection with εἶ, εἶθε, αἶθε, ὥς, to express a wish. — 19. φάς. See c. 24. l. 30. n. — 21. ἔφερον. Impf. *was in the act of carrying it away*, before he discovered its real character. — δοκέων . . . εἶναι. Supply παιδίον. *Supposing it to be a child of some one of the domestics*. — 22. ἐθάμβεον; root θαμβ, and θαβ, *tr*. Cf. *thump, thumb, dumb, dupe, stup-eo*, and Heb. דִּמ (dum) — 23. χρυσῶ τε καὶ εἶμασι. A case of what the old grammarians would call hendiadys, like Virgil's *pateris libamus et auro* (Geor. 2. 192); but it is fairly questionable whether such a mode of interpretation is legitimate



at all. — *πρός*, sc. *τούτοισι*; or as adv. *moreover*. — 24. *πρόκα*; a purely Ion. word. — 25. *πυνθάνομαι* implies that he drew the information from the escort by his inquiries.

112.—1. *Ἄμα . . . καί*. *ἄμα*, an adv. of time, joins with *καί*, to connect the action of the two clauses as simultaneous; and it qualifies, not the several verbs separately, but aggregatively the complex action. The herdsman said these things, and uncovered and showed the child, *all at the same time*. It may be rendered by supplying the connector *that* with *ἄμα*: *at the same time that he said this, he also*, etc. — 3. *γουνάτων* and *ἀνδρός* both depend on *λαβομένη*:—*taking the man by the knees*—the manner of earnest entreaty. C. § 368, 369. K. § 273. 3. (b.) S. § 179. — 4. *οἴός τε*. See c. 29. l. 9. n. This phrase is by ellipsis of the antecedent correlative, *τοιούτος*: *such an one as to be or do*, etc.; i. e. *to be able or capable of*, etc. In the full construction the subsequent is either *οἴός τε*, or *ὥστε*. Of the enclitic *τε*, Seager says (in *Vig. Gr. Idd.* C. III. § 8. R. 9), “it is a remnant of antique language, signifying *fere*, as the Lat. *que*.” — 6. *ἐποψομένους*. C. § 583. (a), § 635. In Eng. and most modern languages, the verb is quite barren of participles, which defect we supply by the Infinitive. — 7. *ὡς . . . ἀνδρα*, *when now she did not thereby* (*ἄρα*, i. e. by such means, her entreaties namely) *prevail on her husband*. — 10. *τέτοκα*; perf. 2. of *τίκτω*. — 11. *τεθνεός*; perf. 2. part. of *θνήσκω*. Tab. VIII. 2. C. § 237. — 13. *ἄλώσσαι* fr. *άλίσκομαι*. Tab. VIII. 3. (1.) a. — 14. *ἡμῖν*. It is better to consider this dat. as obj. of influence (C. § 403, 409) than as agent, though it is implied that the same persons were also to be agents of the action. — 15. *ὁ περιεών*, *the surviving one*; fr. *περὶ + εἶμι*, *to be*.

113.—2. *τὸν . . . τοῦτον*. The relative pronoun and demonstrative are equally adjective. The noun to which they both belong is generally expressed but once, and that more frequently in the antecedent clause, whence it is called *the antecedent*, and omitted in the relative clause. Sometimes, as here, the reverse has place. *Which boy* (i. e. the boy which) *he brought intending to put it to death, that one*, etc. C. § 522. A. R. xlvii. *παῖδα* is obj. equally of *ἔφερε* and *θανατώσων*, and needs not as in Eng. the representative *it* with one of them. See c. 96. l. 6. n. — 7. *ὡς . . . ἐγένετο*, *when now the third day was to the child being exposed* (lit. *lying out there*). See c. 31. l. 22. n. K. § 284. 10. (a.) — 10. *ἐτοῖμος*. The subj. of the inf. is the same as that of *ἔφη*, and therefore in nom. case. — 12. *εἶδε . . . τούτων*, *and saw through them*. They were his *eyes*. Cf. c. 114. l. 8, *ὄφθαλμόν βασιλέος*, and note on c. 100. l. 9.

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

*noble*, or *freeman-like*; namely, than became one born a slave. See n. c. 114. l. 16. — 5. ἐκπλαγείς. Cf. the Fr. *hors de soi*; *out of one's self*. The Lat. could express it by *stupefactus*; but the Eng. is at fault for the word. It means, *stricken powerless by any strong emotion*. — 6. μόγῃς, *vix*, i. e. *vi* (*magna*), *with* (*great*) *effort*. The Gr. connects βία καὶ μόγῃς. Cf. μόλις, and μογέω, μολέω, Lat. *molior*; *to toil, to moil*. — ἀνενειχθείς; the exact opposite of ἐκπλαγείς; *brought back*, i. e. to self-possession; “*brought to*.” — 8. βασανίση fr. βάσανος, *the touchstone, Lapis Lydius*, so called from its principal known locality; for an interesting account of which, see Smith's Dic. Antiqq. — 17. ἀνάγκας, *distress*, particularly *tortures*, as below, l. 19. — 21. καὶ . . . αὐτόν; a sentence grammatically irregular, but logically clear and elegant. What follows τε καί, is a substantive phrase connected to λιτάς:—*he came down to entreaties* and (to this also, namely) *begging him to have pardon for him*. κατέβαινε implies not condescension, but prostration.

117.—1. τοῦ μὲν . . . ἐποιέετο, *immediately made less account of* (i. e. had less concern about) *the herdsman who had exposed the truth*. — 2. καὶ ἐλάσσω . . . καὶ μεγάλως. The conjunctions are correlative, *both . . . and*. — 5. τέψ . . . κατεχρήσαο, *what sort of death did you make use of against the boy*. παῖδα may be construed, by the grammars, as acc. of limitation, or specification; or better, as obj. of κατά. Cf. l. 23. The simple verb not having the further obj. denoted here by κατά, the action is limited to the subject—he *suffers* or *experiences the fate*; hence παῖς, in nom. — 8. τρέπεται . . . ὀδόν. See K. § 279. 6. — 10. ὅπως . . . νόον, *how in respect to you I might act according to your intention*; i. e. to compass the death of the child—which was the only essential point in the command. For σοι, see K. § 284. 10. (a.) C. § 410. — 17. ἄχρι οὗ, sc. χρόνου. — 20. εὐνούχων. *Eunuchs* were often employed in important missions of trust and confidence, other than those to which they were *especially* designated; if indeed the common notion of the derivation and *primary* application of the word is correct, of which there is room to doubt; for εὐνή + ἔχω, ought to give εὐνήχος. I venture to suggest that the derivation may have been from εὐ + νόος + ἔχω, which would give precisely this form, εὐνούχος; and that therefore the primary sense of the word was generic, *a faithful servant*. The more common use of the word, then, to denote the class of servants having charge of the harem, would be a special and *secondary* sense of it; as a qualification for which office, Eastern jealousy demands the cruel rite of castration, as we commonly read their history, or, as modern travelers assert, excisio omnium partium genitalium. Cf. εὐνοίαν ἔχειν, Plat. Gorg. — 22. τοιοῦτῳ . . . παῖς. See n. l. 5. and c. 110. l. 19.

118.—1. ἐνεῖχε. All the Mss. and principal Edd. have ἐνείχεε. Thus Gron. Schw. Gais. and Steph. ed. 1. In his second ed. Stephanus changed it to ἐνεῖχε. — 2. κατάπερ, Ion. for καθ' ἅπερ; so without the enclitic, Hdt. has κατά for καθ' ἅ. — 4. κατέβαινε, commonly interpreted to signify the *coming to the point; directly at the subject*. I take it in its literal sense (cf. c. 116. l. 21) and as referring to his manner; *he came down*, i. e. from the tone of anger which he had at first exhibited. It predicates then *a change of position of the subject relative to the other party*. As above, the herdsman changed from a position of denial to that of confession and entreaty; and here the king, from the attitude of menace to that of conciliation and pretended favor. It might be rendered here, *he changed his manner, or tone*. — 6. ἔκαμνον, *laboravi*. This word in modern Greek has supplanted ποιέω in the sense of *facere*. — 7. καὶ is correlative with τε, l. 5. He suffered from the reproaches both of his own conscience and of his daughter. — 8. τοῦτο μὲν . . . τοῦτο δέ. See c. 30. l. 19. and c. 106. l. 3.

119.—1. προσκυνήσας, *having done reverence, or made his prostrations*, according to the oriental custom of salutation of an inferior to one of higher rank or dignity. It is unfortunate perhaps that in the Gospel this word is uniformly, I think, rendered *worship*, where sometimes only the reverence of ceremony is intended. It must not, as some, be taken as derived from κύων, with the idea of *fawning*, and *servile caress*, like a dog; but from the common radix κύω, with the idea of *affection, respect, homage*. — 2. μεγάλα ποιησάμενος, lit. *making great things to himself*; i. e. being greatly gratified at the happy turn of affairs and building large hopes on the favor of his sovereign. — ἁμαρτίας; Ion. for ἁμαρτία. — ἐς δέον. The common interpretations of this phrase, *advantageously; commode; recte; id quoad debuit*, come quite short of the idea, which is that of *necessity*; that the result was so caused by fate, or the overruling providence of deity, and that therefore Harpagus was pardonable. *His fault was construed as a providential necessity*. — 5. ἔτεα . . . μάλιστα, *about (κου) thirteen years at the most*. Schw. renders κου μάλιστα, *ferè*. — 6. Ἄστυάγεος; sc. οἰκία, or βασιληΐα. K. § 263. b. B. § 125. 5. — 10. κατὰ μέλεα, *limb from limb, membratim*. — διελὼν fr. διαιρέω. — τὰ μὲν . . . τὰ δέ, *some and other parts; these and those*. — 14. παρετιθέατο. See Tab. VIII. 3. (2.) They must have had each his separate table—a custom common with the ancients. Cf. the history of Joseph entertaining his brethren, Gen. xliii. 32–4; also what Tacitus says of the Germans: “—cibum capiunt: separatæ singulis sedes; et sua cuique mensa.” De Mor. Ger. c. 22. — 15. παιδὸς depends on ἄλλα (sc. μέρεα) in the next line. — 16. ἄκρων,

is adj. construed like the Lat. *summus, medius, etc.*:—*the extremities of, etc.* — 19. ἡσθείη fr. ἡδομαι. The τι softens the expression and gives an air of politeness to the question, which were otherwise blunt. — 20. παρέφερον, τοῖσι προσέκειτο, *they, to whom it was appointed, brought along.* — 22. προσστάντες, is to be taken transitively; *presenting*; or if we read προστάντες, *setting before*; which is the reading of the Mss. and of most of the Edd. and which, as giving a better sense, I would have edited, but that it escaped notice till it was too late to correct. The former reading is an emendation of Schweighæuser's. In some other places, as c. 2, προσσκόντας; c. 129, προσστάς; where the sense rather requires it, as those who edit προ- understand it to be for προς-, the correction of Schw. is to be approved. Thus Gais. in c. 2, προσκόντας; "Vulgatam formam, quam Mss. constanter servant, propter euphoniā in usu fuisse docet Grammaticus post Gregorium." — 25. ἐξεπλάγη, ἐντός τε ἑωυτοῦ; two expressions, the exact opposite of each other in sense, and the latter, the opposite, *ad verbum*, to the Fr. *hors de soi*. See n. c. 116. l. 5. — 26. ὅτεν . . . κρέα, *of what animal's flesh.* — 27. ἀρεστὸν . . . ἔρδη, *that whatever a king may do is pleasing.* — 31. πάντα, sc. τὰ λείμματα.

REMARK—Instances of behavior more cool than that attributed here both to the king and to Harpagus are scarcely to be found on record. The historian is notwithstanding true to nature. The profoundest passion agitates the surface least. We are wont to think, it is only in the East that passion so intense and purposes of revenge so deep-seated and so patient as that of Harpagus, find place; and yet it is barbarous man equally in warmer or in colder climes.

120.—2. τοὺς . . . ἔκριναν, *the same ones of the Magi who had interpreted the dream for him in that way*; i. e. in the way previously related, c. 108. The ellipsis is apparently strained. — 5. ἐπέζωσε καὶ μὴ ἀπέθανε, is a tautology which only the simplicity of a primitive language, or the laxity of colloquial style, would tolerate. So ἔστι καὶ περίεστι, l. 7, is no better. — 9. οἱ . . . βασιλέες, *actual kings.* — ἐτελέωσε ποιήσας; that complex mode of seeking to give full expression to the idea; which settled itself at length into the system of auxiliaries. So in l. 11, διατάξας εἶχε,—forms frequent in Hdt. — 12. ἐς φέρειν, *to what do these things appear to you to lead?* — 13. ἐκ . . . τινός, *by a preconcerted plan of some one.* — 15. παρὰ . . . κεχώρηκε, *for our predictions have sometimes found their accomplishment in trifling things*; more literally, *some of our predictions have issued in small things.* Cf. χωρεῖν εὐτυχέως, κακῶς, *to turn out well, or ill.* Lid. & Sc. err in saying that ἔνια is found in Hdt. but once. The construction of the next sentence

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

*their inquiries*; i. e. the customary introductory inquiries. We have no need then to supply a grammatical object for the verb. The inquiries of course brought out the astonishing fact, whereupon, *μεγάλως ἀσπάζοντο*, *they embraced him ardently*; (“with tenderness and transport,” is the elegant rendering of Beloe). *οἶα δὴ ἐπιστάμενοι*, *as supposing hitherto*; *ἐπισ-*, lit. *planting one’s self upon*, implies *knowledge* when the object is matter of one’s own observation; when it depends on testimony, it implies entire conviction or belief. *αὐτίκα τότε τελευτῆσαι*, *that he died immediately then*; i. e. when he was born. — 5. *ιστόρεον* expresses that they now set earnestly about *inquiry* or *investigation*, to bring out the *history*; while *ἐπύθοντο* expresses only the casual or customary inquiry of conventional use. — 6. *ἔλεγε, φάς*. Cf. *ἔφη λέγων*, c. 118. l. 6. A various reading for *φάς*, is *σφέα*, which is not to be listened to; another is *σφέας*, which gives a tolerable sense, but not so good as the received. — *πρὸ . . . πλείστον*, *that formerly he did not know, but had been very greatly in error*. — 9. *ἀπό*, in the sense of *temporal* rather than *local* relation; *from the time they set out on the journey*. — 11. *ἦϊε . . . αἰνέων*, *he went praising her*; (see n. c. 1. l. 20;) or *he went on doing it* (to express continuity) *διὰ παντός*, sc. *τοῦ λόγου*, *through the whole story*. Editors have been puzzled with this use of *ἦϊε*, and Schw. conjectures *ἦε*—“forte *ἦε . . . ἐπαινέων* periphrastice pro *ἐπήνει*.” But it is rather the verb *to go* than *to be*, that is called into general auxiliary use. — 12. *τὰ πάντα* is predicate to *Κυνώ*: *Cyno was every thing to him*, etc. Cf. *πλείστος*, c. 120. l. 18. — 14. *κατέβαλον . . . ἐξέθρεψε*, *put about a report that when Cyrus was exposed a bitch nursed him*.

REMARK.—Compare with this, what Livy says (Lib. i. c. 4) of the similar story of Romulus and Remus “pressing the paps of the wolf;” that it was the reproach of *she-wolf* cast by the other shepherds on Larentia the wife of the shepherd by whom they were brought up: *Sunt qui Larentiam, vulgato corpore, lupam inter pastores vocatam putent.*”

Without disputing here whether either of these accounts is strictly reliable, they give ground for a reflection of fundamental importance in the study of ancient history. We see, in them, how a slight perversion of fact transforms history to fable; how a perversion in some insignificant particular may throw an air of fiction over a series of important historic events. Now the business of the historian of the primitive class, to which character Herodotus approaches more nearly than any other, is simply to give the record or the tradition as he finds it. The sum of his criticism is:

“I cannot tell how the truth may be;  
I say the tale as ’twas said to me.”

But if with the character of narrator he combines that of philosopher and critic—and Herodotus is not wholly wanting of just and valuable censures—then his business is, to analyze, to separate the actual from the fictitious, to detect the germ of truth lurking in the guise of fable or buried under the rubbish of exaggeration. Under the guidance of this principle, perhaps in the story of Arion (c. 23, 24)—one of the most trying to our author's fame—we have but to substitute a *ship* bearing the name of "The Dolphin," for the *fish* of that name, to restore its just proportions and set a veritable and living picture in its true light. Modern skepticism were more wisely employed in this work of analysis and discrimination, seeking how much of truth may yet be rescued from these ancient shipwrecks, rather than how much of the real fragments and gems they may still deliver to the maw of the all-devouring deep.

123.—3. *πέμπων* introduces the means by which he *attached himself to Cyrus*, and sought to attach Cyrus to his interests—sending gifts; and *ἐπιθυμέων*, the object in view—*desiring to avenge himself on Astyages*. — 4. *οὐκ . . . ἐσομένην*, *he did not see revenge about to be*; i. e. did not see any hope of effecting it. — 5. *ἐπιτρεφόμενον*. Wyt.—in which he is followed by Schw. L. and others—supplies *τιμωρὸν* after this word, and attributes to the *ἐπι-* a peculiar force looking specially to this object; *growing up as his avenger*; i. e. for this particular purpose. — 7. *τάδε* is subject of *κατέργαστο*, and *οἱ*, dat. agent. C. § 417. — 9. *ἐνὶ ἐκάστῳ* is *each one separately*. — 11. *κατεργασμένου . . . τούτου*, *this now having been effected by him*, namely, the *persuasion of the Medes*. — 13. *ὁ Ἄρπαγος*; take as subject of *εἶχε*; *Harpagus wishing to make known his sentiments to Cyrus, etc. had no other* (means of doing it). See c. 24. l. 33. n. — 17. *εἶχε*, sc. *ἔωυτό*, *as it was*, i. e. before; with its natural appearance, the hair not being torn off. — 19. *θηρευτῆ* is appositive predicate to *πιστοτάτῳ*, which is distinguished as subject by the article; *to the most trusty of his servants (arrayed) as a hunter*. — 20. *ἀπὸ γλώσσης*, *from his own mouth*; *personally*. — *διδόντα*. See c. 3. l. 6.

124.—2. *ἐν αὐτῷ . . . ἐνεόν*; the tautologic simplicity of a primitive state of a language. — 4. *σὲ . . . ἐπορέωσι*, "*for over thee do the gods watch*." T. who also cites Isa. xlv. 1, "Thus saith the Lord to his anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have holden," etc. *γὰρ* is often used with ellipsis of that for which it assigns a reason. Reisk would here supply *ἡ μάλλον θεῶν τευ*, to which Wess. and Schw. assent; i. e. *oh son of Cambyses*; or rather *of some one of the gods*; *for*, etc. Others, on the authority of Matt. § 615 (who says "the sentence with *γὰρ* is often



placed, by the haste of the speaker or writer, before that for which it gives the reason"), make it a case of hyperbaton, referring it to the sentence *σὺ . . . τῆσαι*, *avenge now the murder of yourself on Astyages, for*, etc. This is too constrained. But on the other hand the ellipsis is oftenest such as cannot be supplied verbally from the context, but is rather an idea suggested by what is said; nay, it often is not even suggested by the language used, but only existing in the mind of the writer, he sets forth the reason simply, and we must infer what that sentiment or notion was from the nature of the reason given; as here, a conviction in the mind of Harpagus, that Cyrus was destined to some great mission. This is quite natural and elegantly concise when the notion is such an one as the writer has arrived at by deduction from that which is assigned as the reason. The reader is thereby simply put in the way of the same process of deduction. Logically, it is an inverted enthymeme. The same rule applies to the next *γάρ*, *l. 5*, *for* (if it were not so) *you would not*, etc. Taking the two together we have an inverted enthymematic sorites; and reading the series in the direct order, it is, (1.) Cyrus has a peculiarly happy fortune, *therefore* he must have been under the special care of the gods. (2.) He is under the special care of the gods, *therefore*—what? Whatever follows is the idea from which the writer starts, and which he omits as being sufficiently obvious from the premises. — 7. *τὸ δέ*. See n. c. 106. *l. 3*. — 8. *τὰ* is joined with *πάντα*; *I think you have already (καὶ πάλαι) learned all*. — 9. *ἐπρήχθη* fr. *πρήσσω*, Ion. for *πράσσω*. — 10. *πέπονθα*. See n. c. 98. *l. 12*. — 11. *ἦν . . . πείθεσθαι*, *if you will be guided by my counsel*. — 13. *στρατηλάτεις*; Imperative mood. — 14. *ἦν τε . . . ἦν τε*, *whether—or*. The copulative particle as the connector of the *protasis* is altogether natural, and is found in many, perhaps all languages, in their earlier and simpler state. The Heb. *vau*, *and*, is also used as a conditional, *if*. The Eng. *an* differs not in sense from *and*, and they are probably of the same derivation, and correspond very nearly to *if*; the former being from *anan*, *to grant*; the latter from *give*; as we would say, *grant this, grant that*; one conditioned on the other. Such forms as *ἦν*, Lat. *si*, and Fr. *soit*, are only conditional or imperative forms of the substantive verb, and must be of later development. — 15. *ἔστι . . . βούλει*. Supply *τὰ πάντα*, or the like, as subj. of *ἔστι*. — 17. *πρὸς σέο*, *of your party; in favor of you*. This gen. construction regards the person *σέο*, as the *author* or *leader*, *from whom* the subordinates take the command. See Jelf's K. § 638. and cf. c. 110. *l. 9*. — 18. *ᾧν* for *οὖν*. — *ἑτοίμου . . . ἐόντος*; the sing. used to denote the *scheme*, the whole business taken aggregatively, *all things*. — *γε* is an *exceptional* adverb, and according to its relation seems sometimes to intensify, and

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

nal barbarism, and partook but little, or not at all, in the improvement of the race. Persian history, therefore, as it has come down to us, is not so much the history of the whole nation as of certain tribes, or possibly even of a single tribe, that of the Pasargadæ. These composed the court, and it would appear that, almost without exception, all that was distinguished among the Persians proceeded from them. 2dly. The above particulars would at once lead us to conclude that, in a country so constituted, every thing would depend on descent and the distinctions of tribe. As the tribes were distinguished by a greater or less degree of nobility, so there was a gradation also in the different families of which each tribe was composed. The noblest family of the most noble tribe was that of the Achæmenidæ, from which exclusively the kings of Persia were always taken. The same distinction of more or less noble tribes has at all times prevailed among most of the nomad nations of central and southern Asia, the Arabs and Mongols, etc. \* \* \*

126.—4. *πάντη*, as if fr. a form *πάντος*, -η, -ον, with ellipsis of *ὁδῶ*. — *ἐν ἡμέρῃ*; not *in a day*, as denoting the duration of the action, which would require the acc., but *on a day* (appointed). See Jelf's Kühn. § 606. — 6. *ἐς τὴν ὑστεραίην*, sc. *ἡμέρην*. When we translate this phrase, *on the morrow*, we do it not literally, though we get at the same idea, by taking a different point of view. The Gr. taking the stand in the present, looks forward *to the morrow*, as the time designated. Cf. c. 32. l. 8. — 7. *λελουμένους*, *bathed*; a part put for the whole, as we say in the modern phrase, *dressed*; either form of expression signifying that attention to personal neatness and decoration which the usages of society demand; and as, in this figure of diction, it is only the *most prominent part* that can represent the whole complex idea, we have in the several words, indices to the different habits and tastes of the several peoples who use them. — *τούτῳ*, sc. *χρόνῳ*. — 9. *ὡς δεξόμενος*, *as being about to receive*, i. e. as intending to; not *as if*, which would imply, false pretence. K. § 312. 6. — 10. *πρός*, adv. *moreover*. — *οἶνω . . . ἐπιτηδεωτάτοισι*. The dat. *instrumental* or *circumstantial* stands in the relation of an after-thought, in the mind of the writer, to the main action, and is therefore sometimes remotely connected with the principal verb, as here *παρεσκεύαζε*, *he made preparation*, not only by slaughter of the flocks and herds, *but moreover, with wine and bread as (being) most promotive of good cheer*. — 12. *ἀπὸ δείπνου*. Cf. Lat. *statim e somno*, Tac. Agric. c. 22. In these phrases, the prep. is commonly interpreted as referring to *time*, as *after*; but the notion of time is in the adv., and the prep. is rather to be taken in its primary *local* sense, or by a metaphorical transfer from this idea to that of act, state, or condi

tion; *when now they were come from dinner*. For the use of  $\tau\epsilon$ , see c. 96. l. 17. n. — 13.  $\eta\sigma\alpha\nu$ . Cf.  $\acute{\epsilon}\delta\acute{\nu}\tau\epsilon\varsigma$ , c. 105. l. 12. Motion is so nearly a necessary concomitant of existence that the same word often serves to express either idea, as  $\epsilon\acute{\iota}\mu\iota$ . The later Greek sought to mark a distinction by the accent; but even where different forms had been appropriated, they are continually returning into each other in sense. Cf.  $\eta\acute{\iota}\epsilon$ , c. 122. l. 11; also the Lat. *eo*, *to go*, and *fui*, pret. of *esse* and cognate to *fugio*; as is clear from the Spanish, where the same form, *fui*, *fuiste*, etc. is the pret. of both *ser*, *to be*, and *fuir*, *to fly*. The French has substantially the same coincidence; and the Eng. *be* is the same as the Gr.  $\beta\epsilon$ ,  $\beta\alpha$ , root of  $\beta\alpha\acute{\iota}\nu\omega$ , or  $\beta\acute{\eta}\nu$ , i. e.  $\beta\acute{\epsilon}\text{-}\epsilon\nu$ ; whence also the Lat. *bio*, obs. but implied by *beto*. — 13.  $\tau\acute{\alpha}$ , relative, *what; the things which*. —  $\pi\rho\tau\epsilon\rho\alpha\acute{\iota}\eta$ , sc.  $\eta\mu\acute{\epsilon}\rho\eta$ . See Tab. II. 1. IV. 3. — 18.  $\pi\alpha\rho\epsilon\gamma\acute{\upsilon}\mu\nu\omicron\nu$  . . .  $\lambda\acute{o}\gamma\omicron\nu$ , *laid bare the whole plan*. — 19.  $\acute{\epsilon}\mu\acute{\epsilon}\omicron$ . The gen. with  $\pi\acute{\epsilon}\acute{\iota}\theta\epsilon\sigma\theta\alpha\iota$ , which mostly takes the dat. is to be referred to the head of genitive of distinction (C.), of Superiority and Inferiority; or, as Bul. R. xvii., to the principle, *verbs of ruling and the contrary*, etc. — 22.  $\chi\theta\iota\zeta\acute{\omega}$ . The Eng. does not suffer this elliptical mode of carrying out a comparison, which is common in Greek, and is not unknown to the Latin. We must say, *labors similar to those of yesterday*, instead of *similar to yesterday*. — 24.  $\gamma\epsilon\gamma\omicron\nu\acute{\omega}\varsigma$ . K.  $\delta$  310. 3. B.  $\delta$  144. 6. —  $\tau\acute{\alpha}\delta\epsilon$  . . .  $\acute{\alpha}\gamma\epsilon\sigma\theta\alpha\iota$ , *to take these things in hand*; i. e. to undertake to effect their liberty.

127.—1.  $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\iota\lambda\alpha\beta\acute{o}\mu\epsilon\nu\omicron\iota$ , expresses their *seizing* with eagerness upon the offer of a *leader*. — 2.  $\acute{\alpha}\sigma\mu\epsilon\nu\omicron\iota$ . See c. 32. l. 46. n. — 3.  $\text{K}\acute{\upsilon}\rho\omicron\nu$   $\pi\rho\acute{\eta}\sigma\sigma\omicron\nu\tau\alpha$ . See c. 100. l. 6. n. — 5.  $\pi\rho\acute{\tau}\epsilon\rho\omicron\nu$  . . .  $\eta$ , *before that*. See c. 4. l. 3. n. — 8.  $\theta\epsilon\omicron\beta\lambda\alpha\beta\acute{\eta}\varsigma$ . Those old Pagans preserved a wholesome faith in a divine Providence; “*quem deus vult prederere, prius dementat;*” and moreover in the divine justice, as this word testifies: that the *god-smitten* was *judicially* blinded for his impiety. Words are monuments—interpreters of doctrine—and often, as here, embody in one a great article of a noble creed. —  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\acute{\epsilon}\delta\epsilon\zeta\epsilon$ . Cf. c. 124. l. 14. — 9.  $\lambda\acute{\eta}\theta\eta\nu$  . . .  $\acute{\epsilon}\delta\rho\gamma\epsilon\epsilon$ , *forgetting* (lit. making for himself a forgetfulness of) *what he had done to him*. The allusion is to the murder of his son and the horrid feast. The ellipsis of the antecedent is common, and the relative is then, with the Attic writers, more frequently *attracted* to the case of the antecedent. This is a refinement, for the *case* of the rel. then represents the actual presence of the antecedent in the mind of the writer. We gain the same thing by the change of form of the rel., using *what* instead of *which*; and it is on this principle of ellipsis that this construction of *what* is to be interpreted, instead of calling it, as our grammarians do, a “*compound relative*.” — 11.  $\delta\sigma\omicron\iota$ , refers to

number or quantity; *so many as*. — μή . . . μετέσχον, *were not wide participants of the counsel*; were not in the secret of the plot, i. e. to betray Astyages. — 13. ἐθελοκάκεον fr. θέλω + κακός, *were willing cowards*.

128.—2. ὡς . . . τάχιστα, *as soon as*; lit. *when quickest*; and it would seem that τάχ- properly belongs to the second clause; as, *when he learned, he quickest* uttered his threats, i. e. immediately; it was the first thing he did. — ἔφη ἀπειλέων, *speak threatening*. — 5. οἱ . . . μετεῖναι, *who advised him to send away, etc.*; μετ- Ion. for μεθεῖναι. — 6. ἀνεσκολόπισε, *impaled*, which was done by lifting the victim on a pole (σκόλοψ) thrust through his back and coming out at the mouth. Some would render it, *crucified*. Cf. σκολιός, *crooked, curved*, the root of which may be κολ (Tab. III. Σ), whence κοῖλος, *hollow, or hollowed, scooped out*; then σκολ + οψ; SCOLLOP. — 9. ἐζωγράθη; a hunting term, *to take alive*.

REMARKS.—The account of Herodotus, that Cyrus added Media to Persia by conquest, is better supported by ancient authorities than that of Xenophon, who makes him succeed peaceably to the throne, by marrying the daughter of the king. Xenophon further differs, in saying that Cyrus was in alliance and affinity with *Cyaxares*, the predecessor of Astyages; and that as general of Cyaxares he carried on his Lydian war and effected the memorable capture of Babylon. And not only is Herodotus sustained by Strabo, Plutarch, and Diodorus at least, of the ancients, but Xenophon renders his own account suspicious, by what he says in the *Anabasis* of the younger Cyrus (iii. 4), where he takes notice of the ruins of a town on the banks of the Tigris, and says it is the place to which the consort of the king of Media fled for refuge when the Medes lost the empire to the Persians; and that the city was besieged by the Persians, though they found it inexpugnable.

Herodotus gives no details of the battle, which a writer disposed to draw on his imagination would naturally do, not even the locality. Some of these are supplied by other authors, and are some of them sufficiently curious.

Diodorus says that Astyages put to death not only the Soothsayers, but all the officers who had betrayed him, and that by his violence and barbarous cruelties he so disgusted his whole army that they sought opportunity to change masters.

For his treatment of the Magi, compare the decree of Nebuchadnezzar (Dan. ii. 2–13) against the Chaldees for a similar fault. The oriental is the real despotism!

The practice of *impaling*, and also of *crucifying*, was in use in many

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

— 13. *τούτων* depends on *ὑστερον*. — 14. *ἄρξαντα ἀδικίης*, being the first to commit aggression.

REMARKS.—We are now brought to a memorable epoch—the supremacy of Cyrus the Great over all Asia. It is a proper place for the historian to pause, as he now does, to take a survey of the manners and institutions of the people into the midst of whom we have been borne by the current of the narrative. His manner in this respect is precisely imitated by such writers as Robertson and Gibbon—the most philosophic of our historians.

The Median dynasty is closed; of which, the chronological canon, according to our author, stands thus:—

1st. Deïoces	(c.102)	53	years.
2d. Phraortes	(“ “ )	22	“ He wars with Assyria, and takes most of upper Asia except Assyria proper.
3d. Cyaxares	(c.106)	40	“ including the 28 of the Scythian subjugation. Wars with Lydia 5 years (74), took Nineveh (106), and became master of all Asia except Babylon, and hence is reckoned by Diodorus in the list of kings of Assyria.
4th. Astyages	(c.130)	35	“ king also of Assyria.
Total,		150	“
which added to		559	—the first of Cyrus (see Rem. c. 32)
gives		709	for the first of Deïoces.

But our author says here that the Medic domination was 128 exclusive of the 28 of the Scythic, which gives 156—an excess of 6 years over the sum of the reigns. The common and perhaps the true mode of reconciliation is, to suppose that this latter number dates from the revolt of the Medes, and that the six years are the years of anarchy preceding the election of Deïoces. (See c. 95. and Rem.) Larch. says, “This simple and natural explanation, which was much relished by Wesseling, at first misled me; but more mature reflection has induced me to reject it.”

The treatment of Astyages after his fall, as here represented, is honorable to Cyrus, and accords with our noblest conceptions of his character who has the surname of THE GREAT. Other ancient authors represent him to have caused the death of his maternal grandfather by cruelty, and to have sought to cover his disgrace by the pageantries of funeral pomp, and ostentatious grief;—which is consistent with the common character of the oriental despot.

131.—1. *οἶδα*. Hdt. writes from personal observation. He had traveled through the East and conversed with the learned, and laid under contribution all sources of information. — 2. *ἀγάλματα* . . .

*ιδρύεσθαι*. There is not tautology here, as might at first seem, in *ποι-* and *ιδρ-*. The latter has for its object the several accs.—*to erect statues*, etc.; the participle has for its object the infinitive clause—*not making it* (viz. *ιδρύεσθαι*, etc.) *to themselves in their law; i. e. not embracing it within the scope of their law or usages.* — 3. *τοῖσι . . . ἐπιφέρουσι*, *to those doing so* (i. e. erecting statues, etc.) *they attribute folly.* — 4. *δοκέειν*. This inf. impersonal depends on some verb understood, as *ἐθέλει*, in the sense of *solet*, like the historic inf. of the Latin. — *ἀνθρωποφυέας*, refers to *form, image*. See Rem. below. — 5. *κατάπερ*, Ion. = *καθ' ἅπερ*. — 6. *νομίζουσι* = *ἐν νόμῳ ποιεέσθαι* (see above, l. 2); *have the custom.* — *ὑψηλότατα*, sc. *μέρεα*. — 7. *ἔρδειν*. Cf. *ἔργω* and *ρέζω*. The aspiration is retained only in the Ion. and is equivalent to the older form *ἔέργω*, which became in Att. *εἶργω* and *εἴργω*. — *τὸν κύκλον . . . καλέοντες*. This was the occidental idea; hence, *sub Jove; under the open canopy of heaven*, as in Hor. Carr. i. 1. — 10. *ἀρχῆθεν*, *from the but beginning*; these are the ancient unchanged forms of their religion, — *ἐπιμεμαθήκασι δὲ καί*, *but they have learned in addition, also*, etc. — 11. *Οὐρανίη*, sc. *Ἀφροδίτη*; not the muse Urania, but the *celestial Venus*. See Gr. and Rom. Mythol. art. Venus; in Man. Class. Litt. § 47, 49. 2. — 13. *Ἄλιττα*. In iii. 8, the same name is written *Ἄλιλάτ*, and in some Mss. *Ἄλιάτ*. — *Μίτραν*. It is uncertain whether our author meant to designate the god Mithras, or a goddess by the name of Mitra.

REMARKS.—The Greeks did not understand the religion of Persia; and any attempt to translate it into the mythological dialect of Europe must fail, from the want of a sufficient correspondence between the two systems.

The idolatries of the pagan world seem to have taken their rise, or, at least, their distinctive character, in the third generation from Noah, in that grand apostasy of the sons of Ham, headed by Nimrod as the military, and his brother Phut as the sacerdotal, chief. The tradition of the *promised seed* which led them constantly to expect the mighty deliverer, together with that of the actual appearance of Jehovah and other celestial visitants, at intervals, doubtless laid the foundation for the popular belief in the repeated incarnation of the Divinity in the person of some great hero, or holy priest. Thus hero-worship grew to god-worship; the patriarchs became deities. The name of Phut, the head of this system, spread widely as the generic appellation for Priest, or as the name of the divinity itself. Hence, in the East, the *Budha*; in Egypt, the *Poti-Pherah*, that is, the *priest* of the sun; in Greece, the *Ἰουθία*; in Italy, the *Poti-tii*; in Scandinavia, the *Woden*. The foundation of the religion of Persia and Assyria was a protest against this Phutish apostasy, which brought them back much nearer to the pure



worship of the patriarchs. Asshur *went out from* among them (Gen. x. 11.) The Persians worshiped, not the sun as a deity, but the deity under the symbol of fire. Their ancient theology bore a near resemblance to the patriarchal. After their great prophet, Zoroaster, philosophy made its inroads, and there was at all times the temptation to the neighboring idolatries, not wholly resisted.

The "going up to the high places" to worship became the characteristic of paganism, as we see everywhere in the history of the Jews;— a practice doubtless originating in the fact that the father of the new world, in whom they beheld one of the incarnations, was pictured to them as bowing before the smoking altar, on the summit where the ark rested. The mountain-tops are henceforth sacred to the gods.

It is observed by commentators on this passage, that *idolatry* was everywhere a corruption of paganism. Lucian testifies for Egypt, that they had no statues in their temples anciently; Eusebius for Greece, that the first statue was dedicated by Cecrops to Minerva; and Plutarch and Varro for Rome, that for 170 years neither statue nor painting of the deity was seen in their temples, and that the attempt to represent their god in such a way was expressly forbidden by a statute of Numa.

132.—1. *Θυσίη . . . περί.* He does not say, *sacrifice to* the gods; because the victim was not offered up on the altar and consumed there; it was a form of worship in the name of, or in honor of, the god, and, as if he did not exactly understand what the relation of such an act should be, he uses the most indefinite word, as he would say, it was a *sacrificial ceremony having some reference to* (*περί, about*) *the gods.* — 2. *κατέστηκε.* The perf. in the intransitive sense, *to stand*, or be established, as a custom or institution. — *οὔτε βωμοὺς etc. οὐ σπονδῆν etc.* The true logical method of definition—first to enumerate negatively such things as the Greeks were accustomed to in similar ceremonies but did not pertain to the Persian worship. (See Gr. Antiqq.) — 4. *στέμμασι.* Some have thought this contradictory of what is said below in *ἔστεφανωμένος*, and Valknær therefore conjectured *πέμμασι*; but the reference here is to the Grecian custom of offering *garlands* to decorate the altars and temples, whereas, in Persia, the offerer *wreathed his tiara with a chaplet of myrtle.* — 5. *θέλει.* See c. 109. l. 11. n. — *ἐς . . . καλέει,* *leading the victim to a clean place he invokes,* etc. So in the Mosaic Institutes, the nicest regard was had to purity both of the victim and of the priest and all the appurtenances, thus *symbolically* teaching the purity and holiness of God. — 6. *ἑωυτῶ,* qualified by *μόνῳ,* is construed with *ἀρᾶσθαι*; and *οἱ* is but a repetition of the idea of person already expressed

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

προσκέαται (Ion. for πρόσκεινται), *but they lay to at the wine mightily*, is literal, and good colloquial English, but hardly classic. According to Xenophon, the earlier Persians were distinguished for sobriety, but the testimony of Herodotus to the opposite character in his day is supported by that of Plato. — καί . . . ἄλλου. Cf. n. c. 99. l. 7. — 13. ἐώθασι. See c. 73. l. 22. n. — 16. ἐν τοῦ, sc. οἴκῳ or στέγῃ, *in whose house*.

REMARK—This passage, from μεθυσκόμενοι, line 13, corresponds exactly with what Tacitus (Ger. cap. 22) says of the Germans, except the last clause: *that if they should take any matters into deliberation first while sober, they afterwards reconsider them over their cups*. He also gives the Germans the same character for their love of wine and banquets, which often became disorderly. A comparison of the two passages is interesting as showing the difference in the style of the two authors, as well as the advance made in the art of historic composition. (1.) Herodotus states, in the most general terms, the subjects of their deliberations, as, *the most serious matters of business*. Tacitus says, with detail, “*concerning the reconciliation of private feuds, and the contracting of affinities, and the election of chiefs, and in fine concerning peace and war.*” (2.) While Herodotus is for the most part simply a narrator, Tacitus shows quite as much the philosopher as the historian. In this case, the former simply states the fact, the latter adds the reasons;—first in detail, recalling the effects of wine to cast off disguise and expose the secret thoughts; and then, according to the nicest rules of rhetoric art, gathering all into a brief, dense formula: “*they deliberate, whiles they know not to dissemble; they decide, the whiles they are not liable to err*:—Deliberant, dum fingere nesciunt; constituunt, dum errare non possunt.”

134.—1. Εὐτυγχάνοντες; nom. absolute. C. § 340. γ. — 2. τῶδε; dat. instrumental. — ἄν . . . εἰ, *one might distinguish whether*, etc. — 3. ἀντί, *instead*, not, as some interpret, *before*. — προσαγορεύειν, is to salute by *speaking to one*. — φιλέουσι, *kiss*. Cf. the construction ἀλλήλους φιλέουσι τοῖσι στόμασι, with τὰς παρειὰς φιλέονται, in the next line, in which the mid. voc. corresponds to the act. with pro. reflex. acc. and the part specified is then acc. (acc. of specification or nearer definition). In the former case, the act. voc. taking the pro. acc. as the direct object, the part, as the remoter object, is dat. — 4. στόμασι; the root τέμω. See Tab. III. Σ. — 7. μετά γε, *at least next after*. — 8. κατὰ λόγον, *in order; in proportion*, i. e. to their distance. λόγος is the arithmetical term to which corresponds the Latin *ratio*, which we have adopted; and in many instances this mathematical idea lies at bottom, and affords the key to the true sense, of these two most untranslatable words. —

9. *ἐκαστάτω*; not from *ἐκαστος*. Observe here again, as in lines 3 and 4 above, the studied variety of construction where he is compelled to repetition. Here the adv. is constructed with the gen. directly; below, line 13, the order is changed, and the prep. *ἀπὸ* introduced as necessary in that collocation, to show the connection. — 13. *ἐπὶ*. See *c. 5. l. 16. n.* — 14. *καὶ ἦρχε . . . ἀλλήλων*, *the tribes also ruled one over another*; that is, all the tribes or nations over which the Medes ruled, had authority, one over another (not *one another*, reciprocally), in gradation, as described in detail in the following lines. — 15. *καί*, *as well as*. — *ἄγχιστα . . . σφίσι*. Cf. above, line 7, *ἄγχιστα ἐνωτῶν*. The gen. construction is idiomatic Greek, *nearest in respect of any one*; the dat. is common, *nearest to one*. The dat. is demanded here by reason of the antecedent gen., to avoid ambiguity. It is this flexibility—one of the rarest excellences of a language—which the Greek possessed in an eminent degree, that gives to its syntax so great complexity. It cannot be understood from rules till it is studied in its principles. — 16. *οὗτοι* (sub. *ἦρχον*) refers to the people designated in the last clause. — *οἱ*; demonstr. referring to *δμούρων*. — *μάλα*. Some edit *μάλιστα*, which has the authority of one Ms. and seems to accord best with the sense. — 17. *προέβαινε*, *went forward*; i. e. extended its authority far. — 18. *ἄρχον* denotes that *absolute sway* that was exercised, and *ἐπιτροπεύον*, the weaker authority, as it were a sort of *guardianship*, which they held in the remoter provinces. It is so ever in a centralized or monarchical government. Power emanating from the throne obeys the law of radiation.

135.—1. *προσιένται*, *affect*; *readily adopt*; lit. *send themselves toward* (an object). — 2. *Μηδικὴν ἐσθῆτα*. So in the time of Joshua, the Babylonish garment enticed Achan to bring ruin on the host of Israel. — 3. *ἐς*; not *in the wars*, but, *going to war*. See *c. 31. l. 27.* and *c. 14. l. 12. n.*

136.—1. *Ἀνδραγαθίη . . . παῖδας*. The last clause, from *ὅς ἂν*, *whoever*, etc., in the sense of a proposition, *that any one should exhibit a great number of children*, is subject of *ἀποδέδεκται* (fr. *ἀποδέχομαι*), and *ἀνδραγαθίη*, modified by the prep. clause, *μετὰ . . . ἀγαθόν*, is subject predicate; or we may supply *οἱ*, as obj. of *ἀποδ-* and antecedent of *ὅς*, which will make a regular construction of the relative—for him *who may show many children*, it is accepted as *manly excellence itself* (i. e. as the best or most desirable character of a true man and good subject) *next to the being valiant in battle*. *ἀγαθόν* has *τινά*, or *τοῦτον* understood subj. of *εἶναι*, and the infinitive clause makes a substantive phrase

which always takes the neut. article. — 4. τὸ πολλὸν . . . εἶναι exhibits the reason of this sentiment. It is state policy, *they reckon* (ἡγέσθαι for ἡγηγῆνται) *that numbers give strength*. Cf. Ps. cxxvii. 4, 5: “As arrows in the hand of a mighty man; so are children of the youth. Happy is the man that hath his quiver full of them;” and through the East generally, barrenness has been considered a reproach. — 6. τρία μόνον: object of παιδεύουσι, together with παῖδας; *they teach the boys three things only, or they educate the boys in three things only*. The limit of the age of education is reported by Xenophon to be at seventeen. Cyr. i. 3, 4. In the other particulars the two authors agree mainly. — 10. τρεφόμενος, while *being nursed*, i. e. as a *child*.

137.—1. τόνδε τὸν νόμον refers to the custom already described; and τόνδε in the next line,—*and I praise this also*—to that which follows. — 2. τὸ . . . φονεύειν. The rule that negatives in Greek strengthen each other, while in Latin and in the modern languages they destroy each other, is laid down too broadly. In Greek equally as in all languages, two negatives, when opposed, must neutralize each other, as οὐδενὶ ὄψοι οὐκ ἀρέσκει; *nemini non placet*; *to no one is it displeasing*, i. e. *it pleases every one*. But when a complex sentence is covered by a general negative, then whether its subordinate parts shall be connected negatively or affirmatively, is quite another question. The untutored expression in any language is very apt to claim the negatives, in spite of grammar; as if we would say here,—*nor the king himself don't put no one to death not for one crime*. This is natural; it is philosophic, and in Greek it is classic. The rule that holds, for the most part, in English, is a logical refinement, and is often too strait. — 3. Περσέων μηδένα in partitive construction stand as subj. of ἔρδειν, and for obj. of the verb, supply another μηδένα, construed with οἰκετέων. — 5. τὰ. The use of the art. with the noun and not with the adjectives, shows these to be taken as predicatives and not attributives; *the faults to be more and greater*, etc., not *more and greater faults*, etc. K. § 245. 3. — 6. οὕτω . . . χράται, *thus he tempers his wrath*. — 7. κω (see c. 5. l. 11. n. and c. 111. l. 4. n.) has the effect to render a universal negative more emphatic, by taking away all idea of restriction or limitation, as, οὐδένα κω, *no one any how*; i. e. *from any cause, or under any circumstances*. — 8. δόσσα would seem at first to refer to the acts of murder—*whatever things of such a character have ever occurred*; but the correlative ταῦτα in the next line and the adjectives in the next, seem to refer it to the agents of the supposed acts—the children, παῖδια. — 9. πᾶσαι ἀνάγκην, sub. εἶναι. — ἀναζητούμενα, *traced up to their origin*. See c. 95. l. 1. n.

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

sion of new honors, which title did become the personal appellative. This sense favors a *lection* of one of the most ancient and correct Mss (marked F. in the catalogue of Herodotean Mss. and which has been characterized as “Codex elegans X. saeculi”), which has *καὶ* before *σώ-  
μασι*. — 5. *ἐς* connects *τοῦτο* to *τελευτῶντα*. — *διζήμενος*. See c. 95. l. 1. n. The fact here stated, of this class of words all ending with the same letter, has been both denied and defended by eminent scholars, and perhaps we know too little of the ancient language of Persia to decide it. Cooley (in Larch.) says, “The cuneiform inscriptions, so far as they have been deciphered, do not fully confirm the remark of Hdt. In Zend the nominative often ends in *â*. Thus Xerxes and Hystaspes are, in the inscriptions, Khsharsâ, Vistaspâ.”

140.—1. *Ταῦτα . . . τάδε*. See Proemium, l. 1. n. — 3. *ὡς . . . πρίν*, *that the corpse of a Persian man is not buried before that*, etc. See n. c. 4. l. 3. — 6. *κατακηρώσαντες . . . κρύπτουσι*, *Persians, having covered the dead body with wax, bury it in the earth*. This seems to be contradictory of what is said lines 3 to 5; but, of that assertion which seems to be universal, he tells us he is not fully informed. He then affirms that custom of the exposure of the corpse specifically of the Magi, and from personal observation. He next affirms equally positive (*δὴ—δὴ*) of *some* of the Persians (*Πέρσαι* without the art.) that they cover with wax and then bury. Larch. says—Bodies so enclosed in wax will keep for centuries; and that the body of Edward I. of England, which was subjected to cerementation in 1307, was found in very good condition in 1774, by the Society of Antiquarians, who obtained permission to examine it. The wax, however, had been renewed under Edward III. and Henry IV. — 7. *κεχωρίδαται*. See Tab. VIII. 3. (1.) b. — 9. *οἱ μὲν*, *these*, i. e. the Ægyptian priests. — *ἀγνεύουσι*, *reckon it consistent with piety*. — 10. *εἰ μὴ*, *except*. — 11. *ἀγώνισμα . . . ποιεῦνται*, *they make this a great contest among themselves*; i. e. they vie with each other, as supposing there is merit in it; holding that these useless and noxious creatures are the production of the evil principle, and that in destroying them, they testify their abhorrence of evil. Such is the sentiment of the Guebers, as quoted by Larch., and probably it is the best commentary on this habit of the ancient Magi. — 13. *ἀμφὶ . . . ἐνομίσθη*, *as to this law, let it be, as it has been observed even from the beginning*. — 15. *πρότερον λόγον*, *the former narrative*; that, namely, which was dropped at cap. 95.

141-152.—SUMMARY.—The history of Lydia first brings us in contact with Persia. On the fall of that kingdom, Cyrus stands the principal figure in the scene. As soon as a sufficient pause in the action is gained, the historian turns to inquire—Who then this Cyrus is (c. 95.) This leads him to sketch the early history of Media and Persia, which he follows down in regular order, till he reproduces the same Cyrus on the stage, master of the East and ready for foreign achievements. Here he pauses (c. 131) to describe some of the customs of Persia, which done, he now returns to that point in the history which he first dropped; the scene shifts to Asia Minor, where we see Sardis in ruins, Cræsus a captive, and the arms of Cyrus every where triumphant. Cap. 141-153: the Asiatic Greeks seeing their liege in chains, make their submissions to Cyrus and are received with insolence:—thus repulsed, they resolve defence, and despatch deputies to Sparta to solicit aid:—Sparta neglected the prayer of her sister states, but ordered an armed vessel to the Ægean to watch the movements of Cyrus:—this commission sends forward one of the number to the presence of Cyrus with the haughty message warning him not to touch any Grecian city; to which they had in exchange only a disdainful answer. Thus far the traffic of words—*diplomacy*.

153.—1. ἐπιτρέψας τὰς μὲν . . . τὸν δὲ χρυσόν, *having committed, on the one hand Sardis . . . and on the other, the gold, etc.* — 2. τὸν τε . . . καὶ τὸν, *both that of Cræsus and that of, etc.* — 3. κομίζειν, *not to transport to Persia, as presently appears, but to convey probably to the royal treasury.* — 4. Κροῖσόν . . . εἶναι. This passage has greatly puzzled, and, as I think, baffled the commentators. The various attempts at translation and emendation, that I have seen, fail, as I think, of the sense. In the first place, they err in connecting Ἴωνας with ποιησάμενος or with εἶναι. The correll. τε . . . καὶ make the two acc. objects inseparable. Flushed with the brilliant success of his first campaign, as we see in his insolence towards the Greeks, Cyrus was marching towards Agbatana, leading with him both Cræsus and the Ionians; i. e. such Ionian captives as he chose to take. Here I would have a pause. Then, as further describing the ambitious sentiments of the conqueror, he adds, that he made light of—something—what? The obj. of ποιησάμενος must be the clause, τὴν πρώτην εἶναι. Now the particle γὰρ immediately introduces a reason why he made this τὴν πρώτην to be of no account; because Babylon was before him, and the Bactrian nation, and the Sacæ and Egyptians. The connection of ideas is apparent. Because he meditated these gigantic achievements, therefore *this first* (something) was reckoned of no moment—namely, *this first expedition, στρατητήν*, or perhaps the verb στρατηλατέειν, just below, would suggest στρατηλασίην, which gives the same sense. I can see but one other way of supplying the ellipsis, at all probable; that is, to supply χώραν, saying that *this first field of his conquests* he regarded little compared with the hopes of his great ambition. — 8. ἐπείχέ . . . αὐτός, *he intended to lead the expedition in person.*



154.—2. ἀπέστησε, *caused to revolt*. — 3. ἄτε . . . Σαρδίων. It would appear from this that Pactyas remained at Sardis, in charge of the royal treasure, though that construction is not absolutely necessary. He may have been in the train of Cyrus, from which he returned in haste, if we can believe him to have been so negligently escorted as to suffer that. — 7. ἀπεργμῆνον fr. ἀπέργω, Ion. for ἀπείργω. See c. 131. l. 7.

155.—3. ὡς οἴκασι, *as they seem*. — 4. πρήγματα . . . ἔχοντες, *affording, and themselves having, trouble*. — φροντίζω . . . ἦ, *I am deliberating whether it may not be best*. B. § 139. m. 63. K. § 318. Rem. 6. — 10. ὁ μὲν refers to Cyrus. — τάπερ ἐνόεε, *what he was meditating; i. e. his forming purposes*, ἔλεγε, *he indicated by his language*, rather than declared distinctly. — 11. μὴ is used like the Latin *ne* after words expressing *fear*, and is to be rendered *lest* or simply *that*. — ἀναστράτους ποιήση, said of persons, primarily would signify *forced to get up from where they were; removed from their seat*; and secondarily of things, *overturned, ruined*. — 12. τὰ . . . εἶρηκας, *you say what is quite reasonable*. See Tab. II. 1. — 13. χρέω. Imperative of χράομαι, which governs the dat., and πάντα must be taken adverbially. — ἐξαναστήσης. See n. c. 15. l. 5. — 15. καὶ . . . φέρω, *and I bear it, having wiped it on my own head*; i. e. I expiate the fault by my own suffering;—a metaphor taken from the custom of wiping the knife on the head of the victim, after killing it. — 17. Πακτύης . . . Σάρδισ. If this reading is correct, it settles the question of the precise relation of Pactyas; but some, from the apparent discrepancy of this clause with c. 153. l. 1, have conjectured that Pactyas is said erroneously for Tabalus. But the general minister of finance must have such authority, either independently or jointly with the governor, as to render the language here consistent. — 18. τοι. See c. 32. l. 3. n. — τὰδε depends on ἐπίταξον. — 20. ὄπλα, object of ἐκτῆσθαι. — μή. See c. 105. l. 4. n. — 21. κιθῶνάς (Ion. for χιτῶνας) . . . εἴμασι, *to put on tunics under their cloaks*.

REMARK—In pursuance of the policy here proposed, the Lydians, “from the bravest of all the people of Asia, became the most cowardly and effeminate.” They became a proverb, so that λυδίσειν signifies *to dance, to wanton*; though those carry it too far who derive thence the Latin *ludus*. Cf. also *motus Ionicos*, Hor. Carr. iii. 6. In a similar manner Xerxes degraded and debauched the Babylonians. It is the trick of tyrants and of despots.

156.—1. ὑπετίθετο (fr. ὑπὸ + τίθημι), *suggested* (fr. *sub + gero*). — αἰρετώτερα . . . Λυδοῖσι ἢ, *better for the Lydians (rather to be chosen)*,

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

was a living sentiment with Herodotus. Mazares was guilty of great barbarity. He reduced a free and noble people to slavery; he ravaged all the plain of the Meander; Magnesia he treated in the same way; *and after that immediately he came to his end by active disease, not by natural decay.*

162.—1. κατέβη διάδοχος, *came down as successor.* The language always is, *to go down*, from the capital of the empire to the provinces, and conversely, *to go up*, to the capital. Hence Xenophon's title to the expedition of the younger Cyrus—*The Anabasis*—ἀνάβασις. — 2. τόν, relative. — 3. ὁ... ἔδαισε. See c. 119 for the details of the *impious table.* — ἀνόμω, *nefas.* — 4. Κύρω depends on the σύν, in composition, and βασιληΐην is object of the participle; *laboring with Cyrus for the kingdom.* — 6. πόλις. See Tab. VI. — χώμασι; dat. instrument; *by means of mounds.* — 8. πρώτη, sc. τῶν πόλιων, *first of the cities of Ionia.*

163.—The digression from this point to c. 177 does not properly come within the plan of the present work; but a portion of it is included, persuaded partly by the intrinsic interest of the passage, and partly that the learner may become the better familiarized with the easy manner in which our inimitable author interweaves all history, with the unity of art, in a single story. See *Rem. c. 5.* — 2. ἐχρήσαντο. To say, *the first who used long voyages*, is bald English. χράομαι signifies *to minister to one's own necessities*, or do that which *suberves utility.* The sense of the passages is then,—*make long voyages for the sake of gain.* Of the Hellenes, they were the pioneers of foreign commerce. — Ἀδρίην. The successful student must learn to consider his classical dictionary as essential as his lexicon. — 3. Τυρσηνίην. The derivation given by Hdt. c. 94 (see Summary) is probable; that of Pococke (*India in Greece*) is too far-fetched, if not too refined for the age. — Ταρτησσόν; probably the Tarshish of Sacred Scripture. These regions were well known to the early Phœnicians. The Iberian peninsula abounded, in very early times, both in riches and in fame. It is here that one of the labors of Hercules was located, quite beyond the strait that bears his name. See Art. Geryon, *Class. Dict.* — 4. οὐ στρογγύλησι. The transition from the broad, clumsy, tub-shaped bottoms, for vessels of burden, to a shape better adapted to speed, marked an era in the art of ship-building; and it is yet the great problem of the art, to combine, with sufficient capacity and strength, the form which finds least resistance in its passage through the water. — 8. τὰ πάντα. Some edd.—and perhaps it is to be preferred—read πάντα. — 11. ἐκέλευε, *invited urgently*; the root κελ, cognate to καλ, καλέω, CALL.

— 13. *Μῆδον*. We need not stumble at his calling Cyrus, the Mede; for Media must have been at this time the common term with the Greeks to designate the ruling power of the East. It was so in fact up to the very time now mentioned. The terror of the Median arms was familiar in Asia Minor. Besides, Cyrus was as much Mede as Persian; and according to Hdt. on the Median side only could he claim royal descent. So Darius is called “the Mede” in Daniel, though descended from the Achæmenidæ, the royal tribe of the Persians. But further, the operation of walling the town would seem to require a longer time than the interval from the fall of Cræsus to the exile of the Phocæans; and these negotiations and preparations may date some time previous to that event, while Astyages was yet on the throne.

164.—2. *ἐπήλασε* fr. *ἐπελαύνω*. — 3. *προῖσχόμενος ἔπεα*, *holding forth words*, with the peculiar significance of the mid. voc., namely, for selfish ends, is sufficiently expressive of the false design. — *οἱ καταχρᾶ*, *that it would content him*; oratio recta for the obliqua, is common. See c. 117. l. 5. — 5. *κατιρῶσαι*, Ion. for *καθιερῶσαι*. See Tab. I. E.; *to consecrate*; i. e. to dedicate to the king, as a token of submission to his authority. — 8. *ἐν ᾧ δέ*, sc. *χρόνῳ*, *but while*. — *ἀπαγαγεῖν . . . τείχεος*, *they demanded* (or *stipulated*, not with the sense of authority to enforce) *that he should lead his army to a distance from the wall*. — 10. *παριέναι* fr. *παρίημι*, *to permit*. — 12. *ἐν τούτῳ*, correlative with *ἐν ᾧ* in the line above; *in what time—in that time*; or *whiles therefore—then*. — 14. *πρός*, absolute, or supply *τούτοις*. — 15. *χωρίς . . . ἤν*, *except whatever there was, brass or stone* (i. e. statues or images of brass or stone) *or painting*. These, as not convenient to carry, were abandoned. — 17. *ἐπὶ Χίου*; a pregnant clause; for the gen. presents not the object towards which motion is directed, but *on* which they rest after the voyage. Cf. c. 1. l. 21.

165.—2. *Οἰνούσσας*. Several small islands between Chios and the main land. — *ὠνεομένοις*; the present here, as the primary tenses often do, signifies not the actual doing of the thing, but the intention or attempt. They could not purchase if the Chians would not sell, but they did what was to be done on their part to effect the transaction, if the other party had consented, and that is precisely what the verb, in such cases, expresses. — 3. *μὴ . . . εἴνεκα*, *lest these* (*αἱ*, sc. *νήσσοι*;) *should become the centre of commerce, and their own island should thereby be shut off* (from this advantage). — 4. *πρὸς ταῦτα*, *upon that*; *therefore*. — 5. *Κύρνον* is *Corsica*. — 6. *ἀνεστήσαντο πόλιν*, *they established a city for themselves*; i. e. as a refuge in case of emergency;—a policy common in those times, when a whole city or tribe was liable to be driven

into exile. — 8. *στελλόμενοι*, *being in act to sail*; ready to set forth. — 9. *καταπλεύσαντες ἐς*, *having made a descent upon*. — 12. *τῷ* is personal; *that one*; *whoever of their expedition should forsake it*. — 13. *μύδρον* of itself properly signifies a *mass of hot iron*, so that *σιδήρεον* is in strictness superfluous; but such expressions arise in all languages, in which usage justifies and at length the sense demands what is etymologically tautologous. — 14. *πρὶν . . . πρὶν*, a pleonastic repetition. — 15. *ἀναφῆναι*, *showed itself on the surface*. — 17. *πόθος . . . χόρης*. The Greeks, like the modern Swiss, though great wanderers and ever ready for foreign adventure, were ardently attached to their native land, and were as easily touched with passionate or tender regrets of home and father-land. — 19. *οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν*, *who of them*, with ellipsis of antecedent; i. e. *those who*. — *ἀερθέντες* fr. *ἀείρω*, pass. a. 1; *rising up, they sailed away*, etc.

166.—3. *ἦγον . . . ἔφερον*. The phrase *ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν*, lit. *to drive and carry*, signifies *to plunder universally*; to sweep a country of its property; the former word referring to live stock, the latter to all other movables. So the Lat. says *ferre et agere*. — 4. *κοινῷ . . . χρησάμενοι*, *communi consilio*. Schw. — 5. *Καρχηδόνιοι*, *the Carthaginians*. — *νηυσὶ . . . ἑξήκοντα*, *each party with sixty ships*, i. e. of the allies, making together 120. — 7. *ἀντίαζον*, *went to meet*, sc. the enemy. — 9. *Καδμείη τις νίκη*. *A Cadmæan victory* was one which was ruinous to the victor; but why it was so called the ancients disagreed. It must have been from the example of a similar fate in the case of Cadmus or of some of his descendants. Cases which would serve well are not wanting, but to determine which one gave origin to the proverb, is the question. The force of *τις* enclitic is to give indefiniteness or feebleness like the diminutive endings, to the signification of the principal word;—*a sort of Cadmæan victory*. — 10. *διεφθάρησαν*; pass. aor. 2. — *αἱ δὲ . . . ἄχρηστοι*, *and the twenty surviving were disabled, or rendered useless*. — 11. *ἀπεστράφατο . . . ἐμβόλους*, *they had their beaks turned aside*;—bent or battered down so as to be ineffective for thrusting. C. § 437. K. § 281. B. § 134. 6. A. R. xciv. — 14. *αἱ νέες σφι*, sc. *ἔοντες*, *the ships belonging to them*. — 15. *ἀπέντες* fr. *ἄπειμι*, *to go away*.

167.—1. *Τῶν δὲ . . . πλείους*. This passage has such difficulties that the text is believed by some to be both corrupt and mutilated; but if it be mutilated, it may be doubted whether the *lacuna* is marked rightly in the vulgar text, before *ἔλαχον*, as that verb seems to join appropriately with the preceding nominatives, and the sense would be,—*the men belonging to the ships that were destroyed, the Carthaginians and the Tyrrhenians shared by lot*. Thus far interpreters are generally agreed.

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

Another reflection the learner will already have made:—That in the light of such history, the fiction of the Æneid not only wears all the *probability* which the critic demands, but exhibits a picture strikingly and beautifully life-like.

---

168–176.—SUMMARY.—This interval, besides some curious digressive matter, is occupied mainly with the progress of Harpagus in subduing the rest of the Hellenes of the lower Asia, some of whom, like the Phocæans, migrated to foreign parts. Bios and Thales, two of the seven Wise, mingled in the counsels of the Ionians, the former of whom proposed to sail to Sardinia, and the latter is said to have tried his hand, like Locke, at framing a political constitution, and apparently with as little success. The experiments possess an interest, as demonstrating that a liberal constitution must grow out of the sentiments of the people: it cannot be imposed.

177.—1. Τὰ. Fisk (R. viii. 6) has a good remark on this use of the article:—“The neut. art. standing alone with the gen. of a substantive signifies every thing that pertains to the person or thing denoted by the substantive.” In this principle he explains such forms as τὸ ἐμὸν (for ἐγὼ or μέ, as c. 108. l. 22) = τὸ ἐμοῦ, or τὰ ἐμοῦ. — ἀνάστατα ἐποίηε. See c. 155. l. 11. — 3. τὰ . . . πλέω, *the greater part of them*. πλέω, contracted from πλέονα, Ion. for πλείονα. — 4. τὰ . . . παρέσχε, *but those which afforded (or caused) him*, etc.

REMARK—Cyrus then did not march from Lydia direct to Babylon, but a large part of his reign is comprised in this period, in which he subdued most of Upper Asia.

178.—2. Ασσυρίοισι cannot here designate distinctively the Assyrians as a people, but that which remained as the central part of the old Assyrian empire. — 3. πόλιστα. See n. c. 98. l. 10. — 4. καὶ . . . κατεστήκεε, *and where* (ἐνθα = ἐν τὰ ᾧ, *in the which*) *the government was established, when Nineveh was overthrown*. The dat. σφι does not limit any particular word, but the sentence—*it happened to them*, or this is to be said *in reference to them*, that *there the government*, etc. See c. 31. l. 22. n. — 7. μέτωπον ἕκαστον, *each side*; lit. *each front*; acc. of specification, as is also μέγας. — 8. σταδίων depends on μέγας, or construed absolutely as *measure of magnitude*. Bul. R. xxxvii. — 11. ἄλλο πόλισμα τῶν; partitive construction, with ellipsis of the antecedent. A more regular form would be ἄλλο πολισμάτων τῶν. See n. c. 127. l. 9. and c. 133. l. 5, *as no other one of the cities that we know*. — 12. τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν. Cf. c. 6. l. 5. and c. 23. l. 8. — βαθέα, εὐρέα. See Tab. II. 1. and IV. 5. — 13. μετά, adv. correlative with πρῶτα; *next in order*; *after this* = ἔπειτα, q. d. ἐπὶ τὰ, *upon which*, or *next to which*.

— τεῖχος, sc. ἐστί. — 14. πηχέων. See above, l. 8. — 15. Join τοῦ μετρίου with πήχεος, *the common cubit*. See n. c. 130. l. 3.

REMARK.—Measures of length were naturally estimated, at first, by certain members of the human frame, or their capacity, which became thence the standards in a conventional system of measures; as, *foot, hand, finger* (*digitus, δάκτυλος*), *palm, span*, etc., as also *ell, cubitus, πήχυς*; the length of the forearm, from the elbow “to the wrist or to the knuckle of the middle finger”—authority is thus indefinite. “The medium cubit is probably that which was in use among the Greeks of Asia Minor, and therefore the most familiar to Hdt. The cubit of Samos was equal to that of Egypt. (Hdt. ii. 168.) M. D’Anville reckons the cubit of Egypt at one foot eight inches and six lines.” L. Other authorities estimate the cubit of Sacred Scripture at 21.888 inches, and Sir Isaac Newton, at  $26\frac{1}{2}$  Roman unciaë, equal to 25.724875 inches. The royal cubit was distinguished, both in Egypt and the East, as longer than the common, by about three inches.

179.—1. ἴνα, *quem in usum*. Schw. — ἐκ . . . γῆ, *the earth* taken or dug out of the ditch. — 2. ὄντινα τρόπον; adverbial acc. C. § 440. — 3. ἐπλίθειον τὴν γῆν, *molded the clay into bricks*. — 4. τὴν . . . ἐκφερομένην gives the full expression. Cf. above ἐκ τ. τάφρου. — ἐλκύσαντες. Art is ever bending language to its technical uses, by any principle of association it may choose or chance to lay hold of, and as the points of association are numerous, we have hence great diversity of usage. The Greeks said—which is not admissible in English—to *draw bricks*, to signify the molding of them, from the circumstance doubtless that extracting them from the mold is the finishing act of the complex operation. So the Latins said *ducere lateres*. — 5. ἱκανὰς refers to quantity or numbers relative to the capacity of the kiln. — μετὰ. See c. 178. l. 13. — 6. τέλματι . . . ἀσφάλτω. The art both of brickmaking and of cementing the walls was practised in the days of Nimrod as in those of Nitocris; for “they said one to another, Go to, let us make brick and burn them thoroughly. And they had brick for stone, and slime had they for mortar.” Gen. xi. 3. — διὰ . . . δόμων, *at intervals of thirty layers, or ranges*; an unusual sense of δόμος. It properly signifies a *building with completeness*, whether complex, as a house with many apartments, or simple, as a room, a chamber, in a house; or, when said, as here, of the material of the structure, a certain defined portion (not a fragment), as an *entire range* of brick is viewed as so far forth a *building, a structure*; which it is literally, as cf. *struo*. — 7. ταρσοὺς καλάμων, not crates or wrought wicker-work, but the layers were spread crossing at random in all directions. — ἔδειμαν. See above,



on δόμων. — 9. τεῖχος, with χεῖλα, is obj. of ἔδειμαν. — 10. ἔσχατα; the *edges* of the wall. — μουνόκωλα. It is questioned whether this means that the *towers* (οἰκήματα) are *one story*, or *having one room*. Doubtless the latter, as these served probably not so much for battlements or towers of defence, as for watchtowers; and hence the doors were made to look toward each other (τετραμμένα ἐς ἄλληλα) so that the sentinels could command the entire view of the wall. — 11. τεθρίπῳ περιέλασιν, a *drive* (i. e. space for driving) *for a four-horse chariot*. The ancients, whatever number of horses they had to the chariot, yoked them all abreast. — 12. πύλαι . . . ἑκατόν, the *hundred gates* were arranged at equal intervals, twenty-five on a side, with fifty streets stretching through the entire city, crossing each other at right angles. — 13. χάλκεαι. Cf. Isa. xlv. 2, prophesying the power of Cyrus:—"I will break in pieces the *gates of brass*, and cut in sunder the bars of iron." — σταθμοί, the *pillars*. — 14. ὡσαύτως refers to χάλκεαι; the *pillars and lintels* were likewise made of brass. — 16. ἐσβάλλει . . . ῥέεθρον is a more philosophic form of expression than the English, *it empties*, etc.; and *disembogues* is intolerable.

180.—4. Ἀρμενίων. Cf. notes on c. 15. l. 2, and c. 6. l. 4. The abstract name of the *country* comes from the adj., by ellipsis of the noun; as, ἡ Ἀρμενίη, sc. χώρα. — 5. Ἐρυθρὴν. See c. 1. l. 3. — 6. ἐλήλαται. It is not so well to consider this a middle verb transitive, with ἀγῶνας for object; but rather in its proper sense of passive, with the limiting accusative. The periphrastic form, εἶχε ἐληλάμενος, would correspond to the Eng. *had the corners extended*. Cf. c. 73. l. 7. — 7. αἱ ἐπικαμπαὶ . . . παρατείνει. If the river was straight or nearly so through the city, αἱ ἐπικαμπαὶ cannot signify *windings*, but that portion of the wall which ran from the *corners* of the main outer wall, along the river, and hence called *the turns* of the wall; i. e. the *turned portion of it*. Read αἰμασιῇ as appositive pred., and controlling the number of the verb by reason of the collocation:—*The turns extend along either margin of the river a rampart of baked brick*. — 8. τὸ . . . αὐτό; the *city itself*. — 10. κατατέμνηται . . . ἰθείας, *is cut into streets* (which are) *straight*; acc. of effect.— τὰς τε . . . ἐχούσας, *both the others, and the cross-streets, those leading to the river*.

REMARKS.—The great extent of Babylon and Nineveh would seem to us quite incredible if we suppose the density of population throughout which we see in modern cities. Instead of this, they were vast enclosures embracing probably several villages and much open country. Babylon was, according to Hdt., with whom Pliny agrees (but perhaps he only copies from Hdt., and therefore adds nothing to his

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

*night*; the acc. implying the idea of time continued or protracted to a certain degree. — ὅτι μή, *except* (C. § 671. 9), but only after a negative; *whatever is not this* (i. e. *except* or *besides* this) *is nothing*. — 20. ὡς λέγουσι οἱ Χαλδαῖοι. *The Chaldees* were the sacerdotal tribe. Herodotus was little enough disposed to credit fables or the inventions of superstition, and he knew sufficiently the corruptions of priestcraft, “leading captive silly women.”

REMARKS.—There is a pile of ruins within the supposed limits of the ancient city of Babylon, called by the Arabs Birs Nimroud (“Palace of Nimrod”), which, by agreement of modern travelers, is believed to mark the site of this tower-temple of Belus; which again, while it must not be confounded with the original tower of Babel, was probably on or near the same foundation, and was in fact but the realization of the old idea projected by the great-grandson of Noah, and from him delivered to his posterity as the central religious idea of the nation, and to which they clung with a religious tenacity, despite the manifest vengeance of Heaven against it. This ruin, standing a little to the east of the present bed of the Euphrates, is described by Rich as quoted by Layard (*Nineveh and Babylon*, cap. xxii.) as “198 feet high and having on its summit a compact mass of brickwork, 37 feet high by 28 broad, the whole being thus 235 feet in perpendicular height.” Layard says, further on, “The brickwork still visible in the lower parts of the mound, as well as in the upper, shows the sides of *several distinct stages or terraces*.”

182.—1. οἱ αὐτοὶ οὗτοι, namely, οἱ Χαλδαῖοι. — 2. νηόν, *a chapel*, or a single hall dedicated to a particular purpose, as distinguished from ἱρόν, which designates the entire sacred pile. — 5. ἐν τῷ, sc. ἱρῷ. — Θεβαιέος, gen. of Θεβαιεύς. — 6. ἀμφότεραι δὲ αὐται, i. e. both the one at Babylon and the one at Thebes. — 8. πρόμαντις, *the priestess*, who gives forth the oracle. — οὐ . . . αὐτόθι. From Servius (ad *Æn.* iv. 143) we learn that Apollo gave responses at Patara during the six winter months, and during the six summer months, at Delos; whence Virgil,

“— ubi hybernæ Lyciam Xanthique fluentæ  
Deserit, ac Delum maternam invisit Apollo;”

and Horace (*Carr.* iii. 4. 64), “Delius et Patareus Apollo.” — 9. αὐτόθι; so above, *l.* 5, ἐκεῖθι. We have in the adverbial endings *θεν*, *θι*, *δε*, corresponding to the three oblique cases, the relics of an old declension, or the rudiments of a forming declension which failed to establish and perpetuate itself. — 10. συγκατακληῖται. The learner will bear in mind that *ηῖ*, wherever it occurs, is Ion. for *ει*.

183.—1. ἱροῦ, gen. possessive, *there is of the temple*, i. e. belonging to it, or constituting a part of it. — 2. ἔνι for ἔνεστι. — κατήμενον, Ion. for καθήμενον, agreeing with ἄγαλμα, *in a sitting posture*. — 4. χρύσεος qualifies both θρόνος and βάθρον, but is governed in its form only by the latter; and so of ἐστι. — 5. χρυσίου is not so properly defined as diminutive, as an adj. derivative, denoting any substance having the quality of gold. χρυσός is the generic name for the metal. Of a coin or a vessel, they would say χρυσίον, not to signify that it was *a little piece of gold*, but that it was an *article made of gold*; a defined thing, wrought or fashioned from that metal. — 7. τὰ τέλεια τῶν προβάτων. The interpreters generally agree in explaining this to mean *full-grown cattle*—justae aetatis victimae; integrae aetatis oves. This idea is found here undoubtedly as the antithesis of γαλαθηνά, *sucklings*; but so far as that antithesis is *expressed*, it rests rather on προβάτων, making the distinction between *sheep* and *lambs*; and the special sense of τέλεια I take to be that of *number*, as in the military phrase (cf. c. 103. l. 4), *the complement*; *a certain number*, that is, *the defined or required number of victims*; or, in the more general sense of the legal requirement, it may mean, *the appointed sacrifice*. — 8. ὅτι μή. See c. 181. l. 18. — 9. καταγίζουσι, Ion. for καθαγίζουσι. — 11. ὀρτήν. See Tab. I. E. — 12. τεμένει fr. τέμνω, and like the Lat. *templum*, denotes *the consecrated section* of space, not necessarily implying an edifice, nor even that the *section* be on the surface of the earth. It may be in the heavens as well. — 13. ἐγὼ . . . λέγω. The happy couplet of Scott quoted c. 122 is but a simple translation of the idea of this passage. — 17. ἀπαγορεύοντα μή. See n. c. 105. l. 4. — 18. κεκόσμηται cannot here signify merely *to adorn* something already built, but *to build and adorn*; or rather, to carry on the work with proper art to a state of completeness, having regularity and beauty, especially the beauty of just proportion. Such is the idea of a κόσμος, and the verb means *to realize a κόσμος*.

184.—2. ἐν τοῖσι . . . ποιήσομαι. See c. 106. l. 10. — 3. ἐπεκόσμησαν. See n. in last chap. l. 18, and observe the force of ἐπί, and we are saved the necessity of rendering τὰ τείχια, *the city*:—*who added the ornament of walls, etc.*, or *who adorned (the city) with walls, etc.*, that is, built them up in strength and beauty. — 4. δὲ δὴ καί, correlative with καὶ in the first line; *both many others—and among them* (ἐν, sc. τούτοισι) *worthy-of-particular-note* (δὴ) *two women*. See c. 1. l. 7, 12.

REMARK.—It is commonly assumed that this Semiramis is another personage than the wife of Ninus the founder of Nineveh. This must be so if the date given here is correct; but, on the other hand, we have

no other account of such a queen than this bare mention of her. A queen so celebrated as to be placed in this prominent distinction by Herodotus, could hardly have been passed in entire silence by all others. There is a difficulty here which we cannot pretend to solve. See further, under *cap.* 186.

185.—2. Νίτωκρῖς. See Rem. under *cap.* 186. — 3. τοῦτο μὲν . . . τοῦτο δέ. See *c.* 30. *l.* 19. — 4. ἀρχήν, *empire, power.* — 5. οὐκ ἀτρεμίζουσαν, *not disposed to peace*—ἄλλα, the adj. agreeing with ἄστυα. — ἀραρημένα fr. αἰρέω, with the Attic reduplication for ἡρημένα, unless we read, with some, ἀναιρημένα. — 6. ἐν δὲ δὴ καί. See *c.* 184. *l.* 4. — Νίνον. The capture of Nineveh was under Cyaxares, as we learn in *c.* 106. — προεφυλάξατο; mark the force of the προ, and the mid. voc., *took the precaution to fortify in self-defence.* — 8. ῥέοντα. Some Mss. have ἔοντα. — 9. τοῦτον; object of ἐποίησε, and to which σκολιδόν is predicative; *made it somewhat crooked.* — 13. οἳ ἄν, *quicumque.* — τῆσδε τῆς θαλάσσης, *this sea; i. e. the Mediterranean.* Cf. *c.* 1. *l.* 3. — 14. καταπλέοντες . . . Εὐφρήτην. It has been remarked that this phraseology, *sailing down into the Euphrates*, seems to imply that the voyage commenced on one of the tributaries of the Euphrates, which may have been the case in the common route from Greece or the shores of the Mediterranean to Babylon. — 15. ἐν τρισὶ ἡμέρησι, *on three (successive) days.* Some commentators have assumed that the passage through these canals was delayed by numerous *locks*, not crediting the supposition that the canals could be so long as to require so much time. But in measuring distance by time, we must bear in mind that the clumsy craft with which they navigated the Euphrates could make but dull progress when the force of the current was broken. A few miles might suffice for a day's task. — 18. κατύπερθε . . . Βαβυλῶνος, *from some distance above Babylon.* κατυ-, Ion. for καθύπερθε. The gen. ending θε (see n. *c.* 182. *l.* 9), as also above, *l.* 9, ἄνωθεν, denotes the *point of departure, or origin.* — 19. ἔλυτρον λίμνη. It is doubted whether this should be rendered *a reservoir for a lake; which, namely, she was about to create; or, for the marsh; which is supposed to have existed there, and which she now proposed to drain or to render navigable by the excavation.* The former, I think, is the sense, both as demanded by the context, and from the absence of the article with λίμνη. — ὀλίγον . . . ποταμοῦ, *extending (it) along the side of (the river), at a little distance from, the river; or more closely literal, stretching alongside, a little off from the river.* — 20. ἐς τὸ ὕδωρ, connect with ὀρύσσουσα. The sense is, that they dug down *till they came to water; to such a level that water entered the excavation, which rendered further digging useless.*

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

bridge are still discernible. — 23. λίμνη, read in the predicate, and we have no need of the correction λίμνη, approved by Wess. Cf. the construction of ἔλος below, l. 26. — 24. ἐκεκόσμητο. See n. c. 183. l. 18. — 27. ἐς . . . γεγονέναι, *appeared to answer the design or intended purpose*; lit. *the want*; which want the work was intended to supply.

REMARKS.—We have in the ancient canons a complete list of kings from Nabonassar, the founder of the kingdom of Babylon, 747 years B. C., to the fall of the city, but no queen of the name of Nitocris appears in them. The place of this extraordinary woman is fixed, with somewhat of certainty, by the following considerations: 1. Herodotus makes her (c. 188) the mother of Labynetus, the Belshazzar of Scripture, who was on the throne when Cyrus besieged the city. 2. The works here ascribed to Nitocris, are by other authors set to the account of Nabopolassar II. Now this Nabopolassar II. is the Nebuchadnezzar of Sacred Scripture, to whom the profane canons reckon an uninterrupted reign of 43 years. But we learn from Daniel (*cap. iv.*) that, in the midst of his reign, this king was, for his impiety, afflicted by a peculiar and terrible madness whereby he was degraded both from his throne and from his manhood, for a period of seven years; and it is the opinion of many learned, that this Nitocris was his wife and queen-regent during the interval of his affliction. But one opinion stands opposed to this; and that it may appear the more clearly, I put down here an exhibit of the several reigns which cover the period in question, according to the most generally agreed and probable dates.

	B. C.
Nebuchadnezzar . . . . .	604 reigned 43 years.
Evilmerodach (son of Nebu.) . . . .	561 “ 2 “
Neriglissar (son-in-law of Nebu.) . .	559 “ 4 “
Labynetus (Belshazzar) . . . . .	555 “ 17 “
Fall of Babylon . . . . .	538

Now according to the opinion above quoted, Labynetus must have been the son of Nebuchadnezzar; and so he is called in Dan. v. 18. But this could not be conclusive, as the terms *son* and *father* are frequently used, and especially in the East, in the generic sense of *descendant* and *ancestor*. On the other hand, a prophecy of Nebuchadnezzar, in Jer. xxvii. 7, says, “All nations shall serve him, and his son, and his son’s son, until the very time of his land come;” i. e. the time of destruction appointed of the Lord. To this prophecy corresponds the historic record (2 Chron. xxxvi. 20)—“Them that escaped from the sword carried he [Nebuchadnezzar] away to Babylon, where they were servants to him and his sons, until the reign of the kingdom of Persia.” According to this, Belshazzar must have been son of Evilmerodach; and as he

came to the throne quite young and was withal a weak prince, the supposition is that his mother Nitocris (wife of Evilmerodach) practically exercised a regency, and that, on seeing the approach of the Persians, she displayed such energy either in completing or in repairing the works of her father-in-law, as to have caused the chief glory of them, in the popular and imperfect accounts which came to Herodotus, to be attributed to her hand. This opinion I think the more probable, and the date of her imputed reign should therefore coincide with that of Labynetus.

The impracticability of finding such a personage as Semiramis at the distance of *five generations* from Nitocris, has caused the *number* of Hdt. (c. 184) to be suspected. Some have conjectured 15, others 50, instead of 5. The latter emendation only could serve the emergency of the case. Taking that, let us see where it will bring us out. The *generation* of Hdt. must be taken, when not otherwise defined, at one third of a century (see c. 7. *Rem.*); whereby we have for 50 generations, *about* 1666 years. Reckoning back then from the first of Labynetus, we have  $555 + 1666 = 2221$ , which falls, according to our reckoning, precisely in the reign of Ninus (see c. 95. *Rem.*). Such agreement gives strong presumption that the conjecture is well founded.

187.—2. λεωφόρων fr. λαός and φορέω, *frequented by the people*. — πυλών. The double, or “two-leaved” gates, determines the use of the plural, though speaking of a single passage or *porta*. — 7. χρήματα is *any thing useful*; that subserves a want; and the corresponding word in the Chaldee must have had a similar ambiguity to justify the inscription; *whatever he wishes* (and which he will find) *useful*; *adapted to supply his want*, which she presumed to be good counsel. — 9. ἀκίνητος, *undisturbed*. — 11. χρημάτων . . . ἐπικαλεομένων; absolute construction;—*wealth lying there* (i. e. within his reach, or in his power) *and the wealth itself challenging*. — 15. ἀνοίξας. “The same thing is related by Josephus, Antiq. vii. 15. xiii. 8, to have happened to Herod, on opening the tomb of David, in which Solomon was said to have laid up great treasures; and Ælian mentions that the same success attended Xerxes on opening the sepulchre of Belus. Bæhr.” T.

188.—3. Λαβυνήτου. The Belshazzar of Sac. Scrip. See c. 186. *Rem.* The name seems to have been common, as a title (as Pharaoh, in Egypt, and Darius, to the Persians), with the Babylonians. Cf. c. 74, where the king designated by the same title must have been Nebuchadnezzar. — Ἀσσυρίων ἀρχήν. Cf. c. 178. — 4. βασιλεὺς ὁ μέγας; the title by which the Greeks commonly distinguish the king of Persia.



Though we are apt to charge the Orientals with a fondness for lofty titles, perhaps they can lay but little claim to distinction in that respect. — 5. ἐξ οἴκου, *from home*. — ὕδωρ . . . Χοάσπεω. The Choaspes is celebrated for the purity and sweetness of its water. The Eulæus has been supposed, from a passage in Strabo, to be another name for the same river, but the best geographers now decide that they were two separate rivers.

189.—2. Γύνδη. The Gyndes is on the east of the Tigris. The geography of Hdt. is correct, and they are at fault who would find the river now in question in the direct route from Sardis to Babylon; for Cyrus marched (c. 153), after the fall of Sardis, to Ecbatana, and spent much time in upper Asia, before proceeding to Babylon. — 4. ὁ δὲ refers to the Tigris. — 7. νησιπέρητον, Ion. for νασιπέρατον, *requiring boats for crossing; not fordable*. — οἱ; dat. possessive. — 8. ὑπὸ ὕβριος, *by reason of his impatient spirit*. — 9. ὁ δὲ refers to the river, and μιν to the steed. — οἰχώκεε; Pluperf. Ind. Act. as if from οἰχώω, instead of which we have in the Pres. only οἰχομαι. — 10. κάρτα . . . ἐχαλέπαινε, *was exceedingly grieved, or angered*, does not necessarily imply that impotent and silly rage so common to eastern tyrants, but which we are so unwilling to attribute to Cyrus. — 11. οἱ is pleonastic; for the sentence following is the direct object of the verb. — 12. τοῦ λοιποῦ, sc. χρόνου, *thereafter*. — 14. μετεῖς fr. μεθίημι, *intermitting, or suspending*. — 15. διελών. The construction is completed from the previous sentence, taking the same object as διαίρει. — κατέτεινε . . . διώρυχας, *having pointed out* (the positions—in the engineer's phrase, "having located"), *he stretched* (or drew) *straight trenches*. Such is the common, we may say, *authorized*, interpretation of this passage. I would rather take σχοινοτενέας in its primary sense of *measured with a line*, to indicate the means by which he located the trenches. It is hardly probable that they could have been quite *straight* for any considerable distance. — 16. ὀγδώκοντα . . . χεῖλος; the same number *on each side*, making on both, 360. — 17. πάντα τρόπον, *in every direction*. — 19. ἦνετο, read as pass.; *the work was completed*. — ὅμως μέντοι, a much stronger antithetic to μὲν than δέ; *nevertheless*, τὴν . . . ἐργαζόμενοι, *they wore away the entire summer laboring there in that way*.

REMARK—In a similar manner Cræsus succeeded in crossing the Halys (c. 75), under the direction of Thales as chief engineer.

190.—1. ποταμὸν ἐτίσατο, *avenged himself on the river*. — ἐς . . . διαλαβών, *having divided it into*, etc. — 5. συνέβαλον, *joined battle*. — 6. ἐσσωθέντες, Ion. for ἦσσ- (the verb made from ἦσσω, comparative of

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

suggested. — 23. *αἰμασιάς*; so this *rampart* along the river is called, *c.* 180. *l.* 8, not *τείχος*. — 24. *ἐληλαμένας* fr. *ἐλαύνω*. — *ἐξ ἀπροσδοκῆτου*, *unexpectedly*. — 27. *τῶν . . . ἐαλωκότων* (fr. *ἀλίσκομαι*); absolute construction. — 28. *ἐαλωκότας* agrees with the subject of the verb; *διὰ* *not learn that* themselves were to be *captured*. K. § 310. 3. “According to Aristotle, *Polit.* iii. 2, quoted by Bæhr, even on the third day after, it was not known in some parts of the city that it was taken; and considering the size of the city, this does not appear impossible.” T.; who also cites *Jer.* li. 31, “One post shall run to meet another, and one messenger to meet another, to shew the king of Babylon that his kingdom is taken at one end.” — 29. *τυχεῖν . . . ὀρτήν* (see *Tab. I. E.*); the infinitive depends on *λέγεται*, above. Cf. *Dan.* v. 1, 30, 31, “Belshazzar the king made a great feast to a thousand of his lords, and drank wine before the thousand. \* \* In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain. And \* \* the Median took the kingdom.” — 30. *ἕς . . . ἐπύθοντο*, *until they learned what had actually taken place*. *καὶ τὸ κάρτα* is commonly interpreted, *the truth*, or emphatically, *the very truth*. I would explain it by ellipsis of *γερόμενον*. — 31. *τότε πρῶτον*. Babylon suffered a second siege and capture under Darius, nearly a century and a half subsequent.

REMARKS.—Another scene of the great drama of the East is closed. Whatever allowance we may make for the exaggerations of national vanity or excited imagination, Babylon was yet, for its time, a magnificent city, though, compared with the perfections of modern art, excelling rather in the stupendousness than in the elegance of its works.

The history of Babylon goes back to the days of the patriarchs—almost to the days of the flood, though the history of the *kingdom* which now ends, dates back but a little over two centuries. We have seen (*c.* 95. *Rem.*) that the ancient kingdom fell under the power of Nineveh, and continued a part of the Assyrian empire from Ninus to Sardanapalus; probably from something over 2200 to 821 years before Christ. Against that voluptuous and tyrannical prince, Belesis, satrap of Babylonia, conspired with Arbaces, satrap of Media. Sardanapalus fell; Arbaces ascended the throne of the empire; and whether Babylonia continued politically independent or sank back to the condition of a satrapy, it is not till three quarters of a century later that she assumes the dignity of an independent state in history. The era of Nabonassar, which is the historical era of Babylon, dates 747 B. C. Under Nabopolassar I. the thirteenth in the succession, his son, Nebuchadnezzar, led his forces to the western borders of Asia, shut up the Egyptians in their own country, subdued Judea and Phœnicia and all Syria, and carried captive the Jews and the sacred vessels and placed them in the

temple of Belus. The seventy years' captivity commences, according to Prideaux, two years before Nebuchadnezzar succeeds to the throne of his father, and the decree of Cyrus for the restoration goes forth two years after the conquest of Babylon.

Herodotus leaves Astyages out of view after the ascension of Cyrus; but according to the Sacred writers, Astyages (called in S. S. Darius, see c. 188. l. 3) must have been continued nominally at the head of the empire till his death, which occurred two years after the taking of the city, and thus the decree of the restoration, which dates from the first of Cyrus, is from the first of his sole reign. See Dan. v. 31. *et seqq.* 2 Chron. xxxvi. 22.

In the fall of Babylon was consummated also a grand moral epoch. In it was fulfilled a succession of prophecies with a great variety of detail corresponding precisely with the subsequent record of events. (See Isa. xiii., xiv. 4. *et seqq.* xlv. 28—xlviii. Jer. li. 41. *et seqq.* Dan. *passim*; *et all.*) No passage of history of any times can be selected more replete with instruction than this—none in which the great lesson of history is more obvious; for nowhere do we find more clearly set forth the true idea of history, namely—GOD IN HIS PROVIDENCE RECONCILING THE WORLD UNTO HIMSELF—“The Most High RULETH among men.” Babylon was the chosen instrument to chastise the rebellious chosen people; but because she executed the divine commission haughtily, oppressively, impiously, therefore the divine vengeance smote her. (See Isa. xlvii. 6.) And it was precisely at that hour when Belshazzar, to carry to its height his insult against Jehovah, had ordered the sacred vessels from Jerusalem to be brought down to his banquet, and was pouring wine to “his thousand lords” from the consecrated gold, that the hand-writing appeared on the wall against him; and it was precisely as Daniel was reading the interpretation, and “the king’s countenance was changed, and the joints of his loins were loosed, and his knees smote one against the other,” that the armies of Cyrus were pouring in through the channel of the river, and “in that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldæans slain.”

192.—2. βασιλέϊ τῷ μεγάλῳ. Cf. c. 188. l. 4. — 4. πᾶρεξ τοῦ φόρου, besides the regular tax, or tribute. — 8. τῇ δυνάμει. The dat. expresses the idea of the relation to, or comparison with. K. § 285. 3. (c.) — 11. τῷ, sc. νιῷ. C. § 385. — 12. ἀργυρίου . . . μεστή, an artaba full of silver came forth each day. — 13. χωρέει . . . Ἀπτικῆσι, is equal to (χωρέει, construed with dat., lit. goes for) three Attic chænices more than an Attic medimnus. Larch. is made to say, in the English translation, that the artaba is equal to 1296 bushels! Cooley corrects the

gross error, and reduces it to about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  bushels. The medimnus = 48 chœnices; and the chœnix is given variously by the ancient authors (probably it varied in different states, and different times), at from about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to nearly 4 English pints. (See Smith's Dict. Antiqq.) Cooley estimates the probable amount in money at about £1,710,000 a year; something over \$8,000,000. — 17. ἐρσένων. See Tab. I. E. — 18. ἵππους is common gender. — κυνῶν δὲ Ἰνδικῶν. The Indian dogs were very celebrated. The ancients believed them to be a mongrel race bred of the bitch and a tiger; a notion justly rejected. — 20. τῶν . . . ἀτελέες, *untaxed of other things*; exempt from any other tribute.

193.—5. χερσί (Tab. I. E.) . . . ἀρδόμενος. So, at the present day, they irrigate the fields from the river, either carrying up the water by hand, or raising it by means of some rude mechanical contrivance, worked generally by oxen. Layard (Nineveh and its Remains, cap. x.) describes the common process of drawing a sort of sack-bucket up an inclined plane from the river to the height of the bank, at the top of which it is emptied into a channel which conducts the water to the field. — 8. πρὸς ἥλιον . . . χειμερινόν; that is, towards that part where the sun rises in winter. The canals went out of the Euphrates in a south-easterly direction into the Tigris. — 12. Δήμητρος καρπὸν indicates the *various kinds of corn*, of which Demeter or Ceres was the patron goddess. Δη is an old word for *earth* = γῆ; hence Δήμητρος καρπὸν, *fruits of earth-mother*, in distinction from tree fruits. With καρπὸν, cf. Lat. *carpo*; Eng. *crop*, which, in certain localities in this country, the vulgar pronounce *crap*. — 15. ἐπί; cf. ἐς, c. 32. l. 8. — 16. ἐπεὰν . . . ἐνείκη, *when it produced best in comparison with itself*; i. e. in comparison with what it ordinarily did. C. § 464. — 18. τὸ πλάτος . . . δακτύλων. Cf. c. 178. l. 8. — 19. ἐκ . . . γίνεται, *how great a tree grows from the millet and sesame*. — 21. εὖ εἰδὼς . . . Βαβυλωνίην. Nothing could show plainer that our author writes from personal observation. — 23. ἐλαίῳ. This word meant primarily, *olive-oil*, from ἐλαία, the name of the olive-tree; and secondarily, it served as the *generic* term for *oil*; and Hdt. is compelled here to use it in both these senses at once:—*they have not olive-oil, but they make it* (i. e. a kind of oil—the object of the verb must be supplied from ἐλαίῳ) *for themselves from the sesame*. The oil is expressed from the seeds of the plant. — 24. πεφυκότες, *growing native*, in distinction from planted. — 25. οἱ πλεῦνες. See n. c. 1. l. 18. — 26. τοὺς . . . ἄλλα, *which they treat after the manner of figs* (i. e. as they do figs) *both in other respects, etc.* — 27. τοὺς, read as relative with τούτων joined to φοινίκων for antecedent; *of those palm-trees which, etc.* The palm is a diœcious tree; that is, it

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

196.—1. κατεστέαται, Ion. for καθέστανται. — 2. ὕδε is predicate, and ἐστὶ is to be supplied as copula. — 5. γάμων ὠραῖαι; cf. c. 107. l. 8, ἀνδρὸς ὠραῖην, and note there. — 7. ἀνιστὰς . . . πωλέεσκε, *the crier putting them up one by one proceeded to sell; or, continued selling; i. e. till the work was finished.* Cf. remarks on this verb form, Tab. VIII. 2. 1. n. It plainly cannot be called *iterative* here. — 10. ἄλλην ἀνεκήρυσσε, *he cried up another.* — μετά; cf. c. 194. l. 2. — ἔσκε. See Tab. VIII. 3. (2). — 11. ἐπὶ συνοικίσει; cf. c. 110. l. 4. A quite heartless way of designating the relation of *husband and wife*—a mere *living together; cohabitation*—which shows how far the Grecian theory of social life was from the doctrine of the Gospel, that “*they twain shall be one.*” The language of a people is the real exponent of its ideas. — 13. τοῦ δήμου, *of the common people*, and who were not wealthy, opposed to εὐδαίμονες, above. — 15. χρηστοῦ is predicative and appositive to εἶδος. This use of the adj., determined mainly by its position, gives great conciseness and elegance. It is in fact the condensation of two clauses into one; *they did not demand beauty; (they did demand) utility; which may be rendered—they did not demand beauty as the useful thing, or, essential quality.* We may say there is ellipsis of the verb in the second clause, or by a species of zeugma it is made to serve a double purpose. The position of the word, whether adj. or substantive, shows this limiting predicative use. Cf. χρήματα, c. 187. l. 7. — 20. ἐς ὃ . . . προσεκέετο. The order was not, to go from the most beautiful down in gradation to the ugliest; but when those who would command a price were disposed of, to commence at the most ungainly, and come up till they reached again the grade of indifference—*till (the candidate) was given to wife to the one pledging (or contracting for her) for the least money.* προσεκέετο is impersonal. — 22. ἐξεδίδοσαν must signify the *giving in marriage*, without reference to the dowry, as cf. the relation of the next word, ἐκδοῦναι τὴν ἑωυτοῦ θυγατέρα. — 24. ἀπαγαγέσθαι . . . πριάμενον depends on ἐξῆν. — 26. εἰ . . . συμφερόιατο, *if they could not agree; so that the confirmation of the bargain was in the will of the parties concerned, which relieves the custom of the barbarous character it would otherwise wear.* — 32. ἀλόντες; aor. 2. fr. ἀλίσκομαι. — 33. βίου; object of σπανίζων.

197.—2. τοὺς κάμνοντας, *those laboring under disease; being sick.* — 4. νόσου. See Tab. II. 1. — εἴ . . . ἔπαθε, *if any one had himself also suffered such, etc.*

REMARK.—Such is the beginning of the very noble science of medicine, and such its ground-work throughout; it is purely empirical. The art of retailing stereotyped recipes is something less noble.

198.—1. Ταφαί, *mode of disposing of the dead*; which here is *embalming*. Cf. c. 140, where the Persians are said to embalm in wax, though it appears from Corn. Nepos (in Agesil.) that they also were accustomed to use honey. — 4. ὄρθρου . . . λούσονται. The same scrupulous regard to cleanliness was enjoined in the Mosaic law. Lev. xv. 18.

199.—1. αἰσχιστος; superlative of αἰσχρός. Herodotus shows everywhere a good moral sense—a noble elevation and purity of feeling. — 4. ἀξιεύμεναι, *deigning*; so the Lat. *dignor*. — 6. θεραπεῖη . . . πολλή, *a large retinue of attendants*. — 7. τεμένει; cf. c. 183. l. 12. — 8. κατέονται, Ion. for κάθονται; *sit down*. — στέφανον and θώμιγγος are construed together. Cf. the apocryphal book of Baruch (vi. 42, 43), written at Babylon, at just about this time: “The women also, with cords about them, sitting in the ways [meaning, doubtless, the alleys of the sacred precinct], burn bran for perfume; but if any of them, drawn by some that passeth by, lie with him, she reproacheth her fellow, that she was not thought as worthy as herself, nor her cord broken.” Such is the power of an Institution to mould the moral sense! — 9. αἱ μὲν . . . ἀπέρχονται, *some are coming and some going away, continually*. — 10. πάντα τρόπον; cf. c. 189. l. 17. — 15. ἐπικαλέω . . . Μύλιττα, *I challenge thee in the name of the goddess Mylitta*. — 16. Μύλιττα . . . Ἀσσύριοι; cf. c. 131. l. 12. — 17. τὸ δὲ . . . δσονῶν, *but the piece of silver (the money, namely, that is cast into the lap of the maiden), whatever it is; i. e. however little in amount*. — 21. τῶπό. See Tab. I. Ω. — 22. μέγα τί, sc. ἀργύριον; *however great a price*. — 23. ἐπαμμέναι; perf. pass. of ἐφάπτω; *possessed of beauty etc.* — 26. μετεξέτεραι; an Ion. word, used only in plur. where the dialects use ἄλλοι ἔνιοι, or ἕτεροι τίνες.

200.—1. κατεστέασι. See Tab. VIII. 2. 6. — 2. εἰσὶ . . . μοῦνον. Other authors equally testify to the ichthyophagous character of certain tribes near Babylon, and Cooley (in Larch.) says, “The name of Mekran, a province on the north-eastern side of the Persian gulf, is said to signify Ichthyophagi, or fish-eaters.” — 4. ἐσβάλλουσι . . . σινδόνος. A similar mode of preserving their fish and venison, except that they dry them by the *fire*, prevails among some of our western Indian tribes; and the *pemmican*, prepared by civilized nations for long voyages, is mainly beef cured in the same manner and put up compactly in tin cans hermetically sealed. In this state it will keep many years perfectly sweet.

201.—2. ἐπεθύμησε . . . ποιήσασθαι. The passion to conquer, once roused, is never satisfied. — 6. Σκυθικόν. The opinion is well sus



tained that the Massagetæ were Scythian—a name widely spread through central Asia and through Europe. Cf. c. 103. Rem. Turner says: “This nation appears to have belonged to the nomad tribes which wandered beyond the bounds of the Persian empire, i. e. beyond the Jaxartes; and which, sometimes Sacæ, sometimes Scythians, sometimes Tartars, are not even at the present day known by any one common appellation. The Massagetæ, as well as the Issedones, both of them belonging to the Mongolian race, as it is now called, were undoubtedly Scythians.”

202.—1. Ἀράξης. See Rem. at bottom of the chapter. — λέγεται . . . Ἰστροῦ. If the geography of Herodotus is at fault, he is so candid as to confess his uncertainty. It was not yet the day of geographical encyclopedias, and he had not traveled so far as that remote region; he gives therefore what he has from information, λέγεται; and he found opinions differing—*ab aliis major, ab aliis minor*, etc. — 6. ὠραίους; mark the position as predicative to καρπούς, and cf. n. on χρηστοῦ, c. 196. l. 15. — 7. καρπούς . . . τοῦς, *fruits of a certain kind, which*, etc., τοῦς, object of ἐπιβάλλειν. — 9. κύκλῳ περιζόμενους, *sitting down around (it) in a circle*. — 12. πλεῦνος . . . μεθύσκεσθαι, *the more of the fruit there was thrown on, the more they were intoxicated*. — 15. δὲ . . . Ματιηνῶν. This is manifestly erroneous, if, as he must, he means the river on the east of the Caspian sea; and we understand by the *mountains of the Matieni*, those south-west of this sea. He probably confounds the fact he would state here, with that pertaining to the Araxes west of the Caspian. — 16. τὸν . . . Κῦρος; cf. c. 190. — 18. ἐξερεύγεται; the Araxes is the subject. — 21. ἐσθῆτι, and δέρμασι; two objects appositive; *to use skins, etc. for clothing*. — νομίζοντας, *having the custom*. — 22. διὰ καθαροῦ, sc. χώρου, *through open or champaign country*. The open plains or steppes abound in Central Asia. — 23. τὴν Κασπίην. The only considerable rivers on the east of the Caspian now flow into the Aral; but either this was not known to Herodotus and the geographers of his time to be a distinct sea, or the river in question must have changed its course. — 24. τὴν; supply the antecedent. — 27. τυγχάνει ἐοῦσα. C. § 633. K. § 310. 4. (l.)

REMARKS.—Commentators generally agree that Hdt. is in error in making the Araxes the boundary of the Massagetæ; but are quite unable to agree as to the river he intended. Some would have it the Volga; others the Jaxartes; the claims of the Oxus are generally rejected. The objections are: 1. Herodotus' account of the *source*; 2. the *mouth* of the river, which he says emptied into the Caspian; 3. the disagreement of the name. (1.) For the first of these objections,

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

γένεσις; *his birth*, namely, *its appearing to be*, etc. — 9. δεύτερα . . . γενομένη. The *prestige* of a name is one of the most powerful incitants of ambition.

205.—3. ἐμνᾶτο, *attempted to woo; made suit*. Cf. c. 165. l. 2, ὠνεομένοισι. — ἦν; the possessive adj. pro., *his, his own*. — 4. μιν refers to Cyrus. — μνάμενον; part. of μνάομαι. — 6. προεχώρει; impersonal construction with dat. of the agent; *it did not succeed to him (οἱ)*; i. e. the scheme did not—a form of expression not only more delicate than to say *he did not succeed*; it covers better the *idea* of a chief mover operating a scheme through subordinate agencies. — 7. ἐκ τοῦ ἐμφανέος, *openly*. — 9. καὶ . . . οἰκοδομέμενος, *and constructing towers on boats, those carrying (them) across the river; or, the boats (that were) conveying (them), etc.*

206.—2. παῦσαι . . . σπεύδεις, *cease hastening (or, being intent upon) those things which now you are intent upon*. — 3. ἐς καιρόν, *advantageous; lit. according to fitness, or, proportion; corresponding namely to your designs, so as to prove successful*. — 5. ἀνέχευ, *restrain yourself; be content, seeing us, etc.* — 6. οὔκων ἐθελήσεις, *should you not however wish*. — 7. ἀλλὰ πάντα; supply ἐθελήσεις; *but should wish all things—any hazards—rather than, etc.* — 8. δέ; continuative; *and if, etc.* — 9. μόχθον . . . ἄφες, *leave off the labor, etc.* — 11. τὴν ἡμετέραν, sc. χώραν. — 15. συμβουλευόμενος . . . ποιέη, *counseling which he should do*. — 16. τῶν . . . συνεξέπιπτον, *the opinions of these fell out together to the same thing; i. e. without previous consultation or concert, it happened that their independent opinions agreed together unanimously*.

REMARK—This unanimous dissuasion of the project of Cyrus by his nobles shows, I think, that the nation was wearied of incessant wars. With the fall of Babylon, his sovereignty of the East was rendered complete. His empire overpassed the boundaries of the ancient monarchies. From the islands of the Ægean to the Indus, and from the snowy ranges of the Caucasus to the Indian ocean and the river of Egypt, his power was established. Here he ought to have rested. Thus far the enthusiasm of the nation had borne him on; but for further and unprovoked aggression into regions unconnected with the glory of traditional renown, they had no heart. For the king, under such circumstances, to seek still to penetrate those remoter parts in search of barbarous wandering tribes, was sheer madness.

207.—5. τὰ . . . γεγόνεε, *my afflictions, (though) being ungrateful, have been a lesson to me (μαθήματα, teachings, plur. which is fully expressed by our singular lesson)*. — εἰ . . . ἄρχειν. Cræsus seems to have

# INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

## A.

*Achæmenidæ*, the most noble family of the Persians, 125.  
*Adriatic sea*, 163.  
*Æa*, a city of Colchis, 2.  
*Æolians*, subdued by Cræsus, 6.  
*Agbatana*, capital city of Media, 98.  
*Agron*, king of Sardis, 7.  
*Alexander*, son of Priam, (Paris,) 3.  
*Alitta*, a name for Aphrodite with the Arabians, 131.  
*Alyattes*, king of Lydia, 16-25.  
*Aphrodite*, called by the Assyrians Mylitta, by the Arabians Alitta, by the Persians Mitra, 131; worship of at Babylon, 199.  
*Arabians*, certain customs of, 198.  
*Araxes*, river on the east of the Caspian sea, 202. Same as the Oxus, 202, *Rem.*  
*Ardys*, king of Lydia, 15.  
*Argos*, 1.  
*Arion*, the harper, marvellous story of, 23, 24.  
*Arizanti*, a tribe of the Medes, 101.  
*Armenia*, 180.  
*Armenians*, their mode of navigating the river, 194.  
*Asia*, Minor and Upper, 95.  
*Assyria*, chronology of, 95, *Rem.*; history of, promised, 106, 184; kings of, who troubled Israel, 106, *Rem.*; its fertility of corn, but poverty of trees, 192, 193; had anciently many great cities, 178; subdued by the Medes,

102-106; subdued by Cyrus, 178, 188-191.

*Astyages*, 75, 107, *et seqq.*; called also Aspadas, 73.

*Atlantic ocean*, 202.

*Atys*, king of Lydia, 7.

## B.

*Babylon*, description of, 178-183; taken by Cyrus, 191; extent of its power, 192; two celebrated queens of, Semiramis and Nitocris, 184, 185; chronology of, 186, *Rem.*

*Babylonia*, fertility of its soil, 193.

*Babylonians*, customs of, 195, 196; rites of Aphrodite, 199; care of the sick, 197; funerals, 198.

*Belus*, 7.

*Biton* and *Cleobis*, two distinguished Grecian youths, 31.

*Budii*, a tribe of the Medes, 101.

*Busæ*, a tribe of the Medes, 101.

## C.

*Cambyses*, father of Cyrus, 107, 112, 207.

*Candaules*, king of Lydia, 7-12.

*Chaldæans*, the sacerdotal tribe of Babylon, 181, 183.

*Choaspes*, a river near Susa, celebrated for the purity of its water, 188.

*Caspian Sea*, 202, 203.

*Cilicians*, 28.

*Cimmerians*, 6, *Rem.*; 15, 16.  
*Cleobis*, see *Biton*.  
*Colophon*, taken by Gyges, 14.  
*Corinthian*, treasury at Delphi, 14.  
*Cræsus*, king of Lydia, 7; subdues all the nations west of the Halys, 28; his conversation with Solon, 30-33; his fall, 75; becomes the friend and counsellor of Cyrus, 155, 156, 207, 208.  
*Cyaxares*, king of the Medes, improves their military discipline, 73, 74; besieges Nineveh, but is surprised and overwhelmed by the Scythians, 103, 104; subdues the Assyrians, 106.  
*Cyno*, wife of Mithradates, herdsman of Astyages, preserves Cyrus, 110-113; much praised by Cyrus, 122.  
*Cyrrhus*, the island of Corsica, 167.  
*Cyrus*, father of Cambyses, 111.  
 CYRUS THE GREAT, parentage, 75, 107, 108; his miraculous preservation, 109-112; brought up by the wife of a herdsman, 113, 114; is recognized by his grandfather and sent to his parents, 116, 122; avenges himself on Astyages, 123-129; his treatment of Astyages after he had him in his power, 130, & *Rem.*; war with Cræsus and capture of Sardis, 73-75; siege and capture of Babylon, 188-191; expedition against the Massagetæ, 201 *et seqq.*; crosses the Araxes, 209; slain by Tomyris, 214; inglorious end of, 214, *Rem.*

## D.

*Dai*, a tribe of the Persians, 125.  
*Darius*, governor of Persia under Cyrus, 209; opens the tomb of Nitocris, 187.  
*Deioces*, son of Phraortes, 16, 73; his character, 96; becomes king of the Medes, 96-98; his policy, 99, 100; death, 102.  
*Delphi*, 14.

*Derusiaci*, a tribe of the Persians, 125.  
*Dropici*, a tribe of the Persians, 125.

## E.

*Ecbatana*, 98, *Rem.*  
*Europa*, abduction of, 2.

## G.

*Germanii*, a tribe on the east of Persia, 125.  
*Gyges*, assassinates Candaules and becomes king of Lydia, 3-14.  
*Gyndes*, river on the east of the Tigris, 189; divided by Cyrus into 360 streams, 202.

## H.

*Halys*, river of Asia Minor, boundary of the kingdom of Cræsus, 28.  
*Heraclidæ*, a dynasty of Lydia, 7.  
*Hercules*, takes to wife the slave of Jardanus, 7.  
*Helena*, abduction of, 3.  
*Hyele*, a city of Cœnotria, 167.

## I.

*Iberia*, discovered by the Phocæans, 163.  
*Inachus*, father of Io, 1.  
*Indians*, their remarkable race of dogs, 192.  
*Io*, daughter of Inachus, rape of, 1; which was the first act of hostility between Asia and Europe, 2; the Phœnician account of, 5.  
*Is*, a town and river in Babylonia, 179.  
*Issedones*, a people north of the Araxes, 201.

## J.

*Jardanus*, his female slave, wife of Hercules, and mother of the Heraclidæ, 7.

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

*Phœnicians*, migrated from the Erythræan to the Mediterranean sea, 1; built a temple to Aphrodite, 105.

*Phraortes*, king of the Medes, 102.

*Phocæans*, voyages of, to Italy and Spain · founded Hyele, 163-167.

*Priamus*, king of Troy, 4.

*Priene*, taken by Ardys, 15.

## S.

*Sadyattes*, king of Lydia, 16, 18.

*Sardis*, dynasties of, 7; captured by the Cimmerians, 15.

*Sagartii*, a tribe of the Persians, 125.

*Sardonian Sea*, 166.

*Saspeires*, 104.

*Scyths*, 15, 103, *Rem.*, 106.

*Semiramis*, 184; whether there were two queens of that name, 186, *Rem.*

*Smyrna*, 14, 16.

*Solon*, legislator of Athens, 29; his celebrated discourse with Cræsus, 29-33; probability of the story discussed, 33, *Rem.*

*Struchates*, a tribe of the Medes, 101.

*Syennesis*, king of Cilicia, 74.

*Syria*, 105.

## T.

*Tabalus*, governor of Sardis under Cyrus, 153, 154.

*Tænarus*, 23, 24.

*Tartessus*, probably the Tarshish of S. Scripture, 163.

*Tellus*, an Athenian youth, pronounced happy by Solon, 30.

*Thales*, foretold an eclipse of the sun, 74.

*Tomyris*, queen of the Massagetæ, her parley with Cyrus about crossing the Araxes, 205-207, recovers her son who had been taken by stratagem, 212; insults the body of Cyrus, 214.

*Tursenia*, discovered by the Phocæans, 163.

*Turseni*, naval warfare with the Phocæans, 166, 167.

# INDEX TO THE NOTES.

## I.—OF TOPICS, GRAMMATICAL, HISTORICAL, ETC.

### A.

- Accusative case*, absolute, 14. 18;  
before Inf. by attraction, 3. 6;  
of time, 29. 4; signification, 24. 2.  
*Acme*, etymol. of, 29. 1.  
*Adjective*, instead of adv 32. 46;  
98. 1; predicate, position of,  
196. 15; 202. 6.  
*An, And*, 124. 14.  
*Anacoluthon*, 114. 10.  
*Antecedent*, of rel. pro., ellipsis of,  
113. 2; 127. 9.  
*Aorist*, and perfect together, 73. 19.  
*Article*, position of, 137. 5; post-  
positive, 5. 2; 95. 4; without a  
substantive, 5. 14; 177. 1.  
*Artaba*, 192. 13.  
*Assyrian Chronology*, 95. *Rem.*;  
kings who troubled Israel, 106.  
*Rem.*  
*Attic chœnix*, medimnus, etc. 192.  
13.

### B.

- Barbacue*, with the Persians, 133. 5.  
*Be*, etymological relations of, 126.  
13.  
*Beloe*, character of his translation  
of Herodotus, 139. 3.  
*Bœotian shoes*, 195. 4.  
*Budha*, 131. *Rem.*

### C.

- Cadmœan victory*, 166. 9.  
*Call*, etymol., 163. 8.

- Cap, caput*, etymol., 130. 3.  
*Case-endings*, significant, 24. 2.  
29. 3.  
*Cerementation*, among the Persians  
and other nations, 140. 6.  
*Chronology*, of Assyria, 95. *Rem.*;  
of Babylon, 186. *Rem.*; of Ly-  
dia, 16, 32. *Rem.*; of Media, 130.  
*Rem.*; of Persia from Cyrus to  
Darius, 32. *Rem.*  
*Collective nouns*, number of, 97. 1.  
*Compass*, points of named, 6. 3.  
*Comparative*, absolute, 114. 16;  
double, 32. 25.  
*Comparison*, peculiar form of, 126.  
22.  
*Consonants*, originally syllabic, 13. 1.  
*Copper* and gold, earlier in use  
than iron and silver, 215. *Rem.*  
*Crisis* of an *i* diphthong, 125. 11.  
*Crop, crap*, etymol., 193. 12.  
*Crucifixion*, practised by the an-  
cients, 128. *Rem.*  
*Ctesias*, notice of, 73. 4; his chro-  
nology of Assyria compared with  
that of Herodotus, 95. *Rem.*  
*Cubit, cup, cubo, cymba*, etc., ety-  
mol., 130. 3.

### D.

- Dative case*, construction of, 13. 9,  
remarks on, 31. 22; 32. 3; of  
time, 206. 4.  
*Deponent verbs*, middle voice, 95. 3.



*Diphthong*, by crasis, 125. 11.  
*Divine Providence* and justice, 127.  
 8; 161. 6.  
*Dozen*, construction of, 32. 16.  
*Dumb, dupe*, etymol., 111. 22.

## E.

*Eclipse*, predicted by Thales, 74;  
 importance of the date of, to  
 chronology, 75. *Rem.*

*Ellipsis*, in the second member of  
 a comparison, 126. 22; of ante-  
 cedent to a relative, 127. 9; in  
 partitive construction, 133. 5.

*Embalming*, among the Persians,  
 140. 6; 198. 1.

*Eunuch*, etymol., 117. 20.

*Eyes of the king*, 100. 9; 114. 8.

## F.

*Few*, construction of, 32. 16.

*Flexibility of the Greek*, 134. 15.

## G.

*Genitive case*, significance of, 24. 2;  
 of time, 29. 4; of measure, 178. 8;  
 with *πείθεσθαι*, 126. 19.

*Gerund*, lack of, a defect in the  
 Greek, 100. 6; 108. 1.

*God* in history, 161. 6.

*Gold* and copper, earlier in use  
 than iron and silver, 215. *Rem.*

## H.

*Hard*, etymol., 13. 1.

*Hendyadis*, 111. 23.

*High places*, symbol of idolatrous  
 worship in Israel, 131. *Rem.*

*History*, true *idea* of, 161. 6.

*Hundred*, construction of, 32. 16.

*Hycsos, Hucsos, Hookshas*, 202. *Rem.*

## I.

*Infinitive mode*, impersonal, 131. 4;  
 with subject nominative, 2. 16;  
 attracting its subject to the accu-  
 sative, 3. 6.

*Idolatry*, origin of, 131. *Rem.*

*If*, etymol. and sense of, 124. 14.

*Impaling* and crucifying, practised  
 by the ancients, 128. 6, and *Rem.*

*Impersonal* construction, 205. 6.

*Ionicus motus*, 155. *Rem.*

*Iron*, later in use than gold, and  
 why, 215. *Rem.*

## J.

*Justice* divine, 127. 8; seat of with  
 the ancients, 14. 14; 97. 4.

## K.

*King*, the great, distinctive appel-  
 lation of the monarch of the East  
 with the Greeks, 188. 4.

## L.

*Laurent*, his translation of Hero-  
 dotus characterized, 139. 3.

*Leprosy*, among the Persians, 138. 6.

*Lick*, etymol., 74. 21.

*Ludus*, 155. *Rem.*

*Lycia*, seat of an oracle of Apollo,  
 182. 8.

## M.

*Marseilles*, colonized by the Greeks  
 and perpetuated the Grecian  
 culture, 167. *Rem.*

*Marriage*, how effected at Baby-  
 lon, 196. 20.

*Medic* garment, distinguished for  
 beauty, 135. 2.

*Medicine*, art of, at Babylon—a  
 noble profession, 197. and *Rem.*

*Middle* sense of deponents, 95. 3.

*Mile*, etymol., 32. 16.

## N.

*Negatives*, repetition of, strengthen  
 or neutralize each other; prin-  
 ciple the same in all languages,  
 137. 2.

*Nemesis*, 127. 8; 161. 6.

*Ninus*, a real personage, 95. *Rem.*

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## INDEX TO THE NOTES.

### II.—OF CERTAIN GREEK WORDS AND PHRASES EXPLAINED

#### A.

αείδω, 132. 14.  
 αεικείη, 73. 18.  
 ἀέλπτος, 111. 10.  
 αἶδω, ἄδω, 132. 14.  
 αίμασιή, 191. 23.  
 ἄμα, 112. 1.  
 ἄμαρτάς, 119. 2.  
 ἀνά, 100. 8.  
 ἀνάβασις, 162. 1.  
 ἀνάγνωσις, 116. 2.  
 ἀνάστατος, 155. 11.  
 ἀνδρὸς ὠραίην, 107. 8.  
 ἀνεσκολόπισε, 128. 6.  
 ἀπό, 24. 2; its relation to time,  
 126. 12; 133. 9.  
 ἀπό, in comp. with verbs followed  
 by acc. 1. 3; with μή, 105. 3.  
 ἀπὸ γλώσσης, 123. 20.  
 ἀπὸ δείπνου, 126. 12; 133. 9.  
 ἀποδημέω, 29. 6.  
 ἀποθνήσκω, τελευτάω, 161. 6.  
 ἀποχράομαι, 102. 4.  
 ἀρχῆθεν, 131. 10.  
 Ἄσιη ἢ ἄνω, and ἢ κάτω, 95. 8.  
 ἄτε, 190. 11.  
 ἀτρεμίζω, 185. 5.  
 αὐτοθι, 182. 9.  
 αὐτοῦ ταύτη, 189. 20; 210. 3; 214.  
 11.

#### B.

βα, or βε, a verb root, 126. 13.  
 βασιλεὺς ὁ μέγας, 188. 4.

βορέας, 6. 4.

#### Γ.

γαμβρός, 76. 6.  
 γαμῶν ὠραῖαι, 196. 5.  
 γαμῶν ἐπαλλαγήν, 74. 18.  
 γάρ, 124. 5.  
 γέ, 124. 18.

#### Δ.

δε, adv. ending, 182. 9.  
 δὲ ἐπεὶ τε, 96. 17.  
 δέον, 119. 2; 186. 27.  
 δή, 1. 7; 2. 7; 114. 1; 115. 5.  
 διὰ μέσου, 104. 4.  
 διαχράομαι, 110. 19; 167. 12.  
 διδοῖ, 107. 10.  
 διδράσκω, ὑπεκ-, 156. 6; ἐπι-, 161. 4.  
 δοκέειν, impers. with ellipsis, 131. 4.  
 δόμος, 179. 7.  
 δρέπανον, 125. 8.  
 δυνατός, οἴός τε, 29. 9.

#### Ε.

ἐθέλει, *solet*, ellipsis of, 131. 4.  
 ἔθος, ἔθνος, ἔθω, ἔδος, ἐξ-ομαι, 15. 4.  
 εἰς, see ἔς.  
 ἐκ, of time, *after*, 185. 29; 186. 2.  
 ἐκεῖθε, 182. 9.  
 ἐκπλάγεις, 116. 5; 119. 25.  
 ἐλαίω, 193. 23.  
 ἔλεγε φάς, 122. 6.  
 ἐνάρεας, 105. 17.

ἐν δὴ καί, 184. 4.  
 ἐν ἡμέρῃ, 126. 4.  
 ἐνθα = ἐν τὰ ἄ, 178. 4.  
 ἐνι, 183. 2.  
 ἐνὶ ἐκάστῳ, 123. 9.  
 ἐντὸς τε ἑωυτοῦ, 119.25.  
 ἐξ ἀέλπτου, 111. 10.  
 ἐξανίστημι, 15. 5; 155. 13.  
 ἐξεπιστάμενοι, 197. 7.  
 ἐόντες, with the sense of motion,  
 105. 12.  
 ἐόργεε, 127. 11.  
 ἐπαείδει, ἐπαιοιδή, 132. 14.  
 ἐπεὶ τὲ δέ, 126. 12.  
 ἐπί, with gen. of place, when mo-  
 tion is implied, a *constructio*  
*pregnans*, 164. 17; with gen. of  
 a person, 5. 16.  
 ἐπιδίξημι, 95. 1.  
 ἐπικλήσιν, 114. 6.  
 ἐπισκεῖν, 104. 11.  
 ἐπιστάμενοι, 122. 4.  
 ἐπίτεκα, 108. 6.  
 ἐπιτρεφόμενον, 123. 5.  
 ἐπύθοντο, 122. 3.  
 ἔπος, 13. 10.  
 ἐπωνυμίην, 14. 18.  
 ἔρδειν, 131. 7.  
 ἔργα, 97. 14.  
 ἐς, primary sense of, 14. 12; 31.  
 27; with numerals, 32. 8; dis-  
 tinguished from παρά, 24. 2.  
 ἐς δέαν, 119. 2; 186. 27.  
 ἐς ἡμέρην, 126. 6.  
 ἐς καιρόν, 206. 3.  
 ἐσσωθέντες, 190. 6.  
 ἕτερος, 32. 12.  
 εὖζωνος, 104. 2.  
 εὐνοῦχος, 117. 20.  
 ἔφη λέγων, 118. 6.  
 ἔχω, with Inf. 24. 33; as auxiliary,  
 73. 7; 109. 11; with ellipsis of  
 obj. reflexive, 1. 8.  
 ἔωθα, 73. 22.

## Z.

ζε, as a root, 95. 1.

## H.

ἦθος, 15. 4; 157. 2.

ἦϊε, as auxiliary, 122. 11.  
 ἦντε, 124. 14.  
 ἦσαν, with the sense of motion,  
 126. 13.

## Θ.

θάμβω, 111. 22.  
 θέλω, as auxiliary, 109. 11.  
 θελοκακέω, 127. 13.  
 θεοβλαβής, 127. 8.  
 θηβαιεύς, 180. 5.  
 θε(ν), θι, adverbial or case-endings,  
 182. 9.

## I.

ι, in crasis, 125. 11.  
 ἴδμεν, 14. 9.  
 ἰκέτης, 74. 1.  
 ἴνα, adv. of place, in partitive con-  
 struction, 98. 12.  
 ἴρον, 182. 2.  
 ἴσα πρὸς ἴσα, 2. 7.  
 ἱστορέω, 122. 5.  
 ἱστορίη, *proem.*

## K.

καὶ δὴ καί, 1. 7.  
 καὶ ἐπεὶ τε, καὶ πρῶτός τε, 96. 17.  
 καιρόν, 206, 3.  
 κάμνω, 118. 6.  
 κάρτα, 191. 30.  
 καρπός, 193. 12.  
 κατά = καθ' ἄ = κατὰ ἄ, 208. 4,  
 118. 2.  
 καταβαίνω, 116. 21; with part.  
 118. 4.  
 κατάπερ, 118. 2.  
 κατὰ λόγον, 134. 8.  
 κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον, 186. 15.  
 κατάσκοποι, 100. 9.  
 καταχράομαι, 117. 5.  
 κατήκοοι, 100. 9.  
 κατύπερθε, 185. 18.  
 κη, 97. 15.  
 κοσμέω, κόσμος, 183. 18; 184. 3;  
 186. 24.  
 κου μάλιστα, 119. 5.  
 κυνώ, 122. 12.  
 κύπτω, and cognate forms, 130. 3.

## Λ.

λεωφόρος, 187. 2.  
 λόγος, 134. 8; 186. 15.  
 λυδίζειν, 155. *Rem.*

## Μ.

μᾶλλον τι, 114. 16.  
 μὲν...δέ, strengthened by τοῦτο,  
 30. 19, 21; by χωρίς or the arti-  
 cle τό, 106. 3.  
 μετά, in comp. 156. 4; 178. 13;  
 194. 2.  
 μή with ἀπό, 105. 3; after verbs  
 of fearing, 155. 11.  
 νόγισ, 116. 6.

## Ν.

νεώτερα βουλευέιν, 210. 9.  
 νηός, 182. 2.  
 νομίζω, 131. 6.  
 νόμω, 131. 2.

## Ο.

ὅδε, referring to the first person,  
 108. 20; 115. 12.  
 ὁδός—ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ, compared with  
 κατ' ὁδόν, 157. 1.  
 οἶα, 190. 11.  
 οἶδα, 131. 1.  
 οἰκήσιος, 107. 12.  
 οἶός τε, and δυνατός, 29. 9; with  
 ellipsis of the antecedent rela-  
 tive, 112. 4.  
 ὀλιγωρέω, 4. 7.  
 ὀλιγωρίη, 106. 3.  
 ὀμοχροίτην, 74. 21.  
 ὅμως μέντοι, 189. 19.  
 ὀπισθε, 191. 4.  
 ὀργή, 73. 18.  
 ὄσοι, 127. 1.  
 ὅτι μή, 181. 18.  
 ὄφελον, with εἰ, εἶθε, etc. 111. 12.  
 ὄφθαλμόν βασιλέος, 114. 8.

## Π.

παῖ, 121. 2.  
 πάντη, 126. 4; 181. 7.

παρά, 24. 2; 32. 15; in comp. 108.  
 14.  
 παραχράομαι, 108. 14.  
 πας, 122. 12.  
 πείθεσθαι, with gen., 126. 19.  
 πείθω, and πάσχω, 98. 12.  
 περ, 106. 9.  
 περιεῖπε εὖ, 73. 11.  
 περιορέω, 138. 12.  
 περιπίπτω, 108. 15.  
 περιποιέομαι, 110. 18.  
 περὶ πολλοῦ, 73. 12.  
 πεφιτίθημι, 128. 12.  
 πλεῖστος, 120. 18.  
 ποιέω, = do or make, 185. 26.  
 πόλισμα, 98. 10; 178. 3.  
 πρὶν pleonastic, 165. 14.  
 πρὶν...ἢ, 4. 3.  
 προεσάξαντο, 190. 9.  
 προεφυλάξατο, 185. 6.  
 πρόκα, 111. 24.  
 πρὸς, 24. 2; with gen., 124. 17.  
 προσθήσομαι τῇ γνώμῃ, 109. 8.  
 προσκυνέω, 119. 1.  
 προσστάντες, 119. 22; 129. 1.  
 προσφέρεσθαι, 116. 3.  
 πρότερος...ἢ, 4. 3.  
 πυλέων, why plural, 187. 2.  
 πυνθάνομαι, 111. 25; 122. 3.

## Σ.

σ, initial, a movable element, 134. 4  
 σοφιστής, 29. 3.  
 σοφός, 96. 3.  
 σπακώ, 110. 6.  
 στόμα, 134. 4.  
 συγγένης, 107. 12.  
 συμφορή, 32. 21.  
 σύν, 156. 4.  
 συνέστασαν, 208. 4.  
 συνοίκησις, 196. 11.  
 σχοινοτενέας, 189. 15.

## Τ.

τὰ πάντα, 122. 12.  
 ταφαί, 198. 1.  
 τε, enclitic, with conditional par-  
 ticle, 124. 14; original sense of,  
 112. 4.  
 τείχος, 191. 23.

**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**  
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



**Never be without a book!**

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

**A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies